EXERCISES

— IN —

German Composition

HORNING

TORONTO
THE COPP CLARK COMPANY LIMITED

R. D. Strang, Dr

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

http://www.archive.org/details/materialforewest00horn

MATERIAL FOR EXERCISES

— IN —

GERMAN COMPOSITION

WITH A CAREFULLY ARRANGED

ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY.

BY

L. E. HORNING,

Professor of German and Old English, Victoria University, Toronto.

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety-five, by The Copp, Clark Company, Limited, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

PREFACE.

In preparing this little book, the following principles have been my guide.

The grammatical introduction is intended merely to supplement any grammar that may be in use in our schools and colleges. My own classes have had these notes and, because of their appreciation of them, they are now given to the public in the hope that they will find a welcome.

In the introduction to the select vocabulary, p. 17, the importance of getting a working vocabulary as soon as possible has been emphasized. In the main vocabulary, which consists of some 2000 entries, great care has been taken to give students a fair knowledge of synonyms. It is just possible that brevity has been considered at the expense of clearness. Pains has been taken to indicate the government of verbs taking the *genitive* and *dative*, and where *nouns*, *adjectives* and *verbs* require a preposition to complete their sense, this has been indicated, and when there might be any doubt, the case governed. This has been a very exacting piece of work, and as there may be omissions and errors any corrections or suggestions will be thankfully received.

The exercises of Part I. are a departure from the usual exercises in grammar. Too often these consist of a lot of sentences, made up of unusual words and idioms, to be found in every grammar of every language and absolutely without interest to any one, *dead material*. My object in constructing these exercises was to use the everyday *living* language which all students would feel was likely to be useful. Special

attention is called to Exercises 29 and 30, and the translation of these, which form the first English exercise in each case.

Part II. consists of the usual anecdotes which, it is hoped, will be *new*. A few poems to be committed to memory have been introduced. Having found by experience how beneficial such work is to the student, I am naturally very partial to it. They agree with the general plan of the book in that they treat of scenes and ideas which form part and parcel of our everyday life. The words occurring in them were not, however, embodied in the vocabulary. Teachers and students who wish additional material in this direction are referred to Dr. Buchheim's collection, "Deutsche Lyrik," in the Golden Treasury series, (MacMillan & Co.). It is full of little gems.

Part III. consists of selections from Æsop, Grimm, Lamb and Andersen. Of the latter, the Sandman's stories are translations by my wife.

For help and suggestion in the preparation of this booklet I am indebted first to my wife, Lillian Nixon, without whose assistance in arrangement, composition and clerical work I could not have got the work ready in the limited time at my disposal. Miss H. S. Albarus, B.A., of Morrisburg, one of my former students, an excellent scholar and an enthusiastic student of her mother-tongue, the German, rendered invaluable aid in the preparation of Part I. Lastly, but not least, my thanks are due to the publishers for their kindness to me in my inexperience, and for their efforts to make the little book look well.

L. E. HORNING.

Victoria University,
Sept. 16th, 1895

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

Vowels.

The Germans have not the lazy habit of talking with their teeth closed, as so many English do, so that one of the first requisites in pronouncing German is to give full and free play to the vocal organs, and especially to open the mouth wide.

German vowels may be long or short, but the quality remains practically the same. Sometimes length is indicated by doubling, as in **Boot** *boat*, sometimes by the use of **h** as in **nehmen** *take*, or in the case of **i** by adding **e**, as in **bieten** *offer*. If no mark of length be present, then the rule is as follows: *Vowels in open syllables are long, those in closed syllables short.* Open syllables end in a vowel, closed syllables in a consonant. Thus, **Bi-bel** *bible*, **fromm** *pious*, **fin-den** *find*.

Of the *short vowels* in German, **e** in unaccented syllables, **o** and **u** present some difficulty to English students.

The **e** of *unaccented syllables* is sounded like the *a* of *final*. Therefore the student must be very careful not to pronounce **habe** *have* as "haby," or **Decke** *cover* as "decky."

The *short* **o** is *not at all* like the English short *o*, and the student must carefully guard against making the two sound alike. To produce the German short **o** let the student pronounce the *u* of *but*, at the same time drawing in the corners of his mouth a little. Examples: **Sonne** *sun*, **toll** *mad*, **fort** *away*.

NOTES.—1. Distinguish between **Sonne** *sun* and **Sohne** *to the son*, **sollen** *shall* and **Sohlen** *soles*.

2. The **o** of **toll** *mad* must *never* rhyme with the o of the English toll.

3. The student will note that the vowel sounds of **sollen** *shall* and *sullen* are very nearly alike.

Short **u** has the sound of *u* in *full*, *never* that of *u* in *but*. Therefore **dumm** and *dumb*, though historically the same word, have different vowel sounds.

NOTE.—*Short* **a** has not been mentioned as a difficulty, though so many students always pronounce it as the *a* of *man*. This mistake is due to carelessness and must be avoided.

Of *long vowels* the **u** seems to cause students most difficulty, perhaps because of the French u being in their minds. German *long* **u** is simply *oo* as in *fool*. Thus, **du** *thou*.

The *modified vowels* in German are much more difficult.

ä *short* has the same sound as *e* in *met;* **fällen** *fell*, **Männer** *men*.

ä *long* has properly a sound midway between short **e** and long **e**, and therefore a distinction ought to be made in the vowel sounds of **Ehre** *honor* and **Ähre** *ear of corn*. The distinction is, however, not made by the average German, and the two sounds may be considered practically alike.

ö, being unknown to English, is much more difficult. The following directions have been found by experience to lead to the correct production of the sound.

Short **ö**—To produce this, let the student first pronounce the short **o**. Then, with the vocal organs held as nearly as possible in the same position, try to pronounce the *e* of *met*. The result will be the required sound.

Long **ö**—Place the vocal organs in the position assumed in

pronouncing long o, and then attempt to pronounce *e* of *met* as above.

NOTE 1.—If the student fails to retain the rounding of the lips, of course the o-*quality* of the sound will be lost and e *short or long* will result. This is what occurs in South German pronunciation, and this also explains such rhymes as **Weh : Höh'** (*Lorelei*), which occur so frequently in German poetry.

NOTE 2.—The German ö corresponds to French *eu*, and this method of producing ö will also do for it.

EXAMPLES :

Short ö—(konnte) **könnte** *could*, (oft) **öfter** *oftener*, (Koch) **Köche** *cooks*, (Kopf) **Köpfe** *heads*.

Long ö—(Sohn) **Söhne** *sons*, **lösen** *loose*, **hören** *hear*.

NOTE.—Distinguish in vowel sound : **können** *can* and **kennen** *know*, **Hölle** *hell* and **Helle** *clearness*, **Höhlen** *to the caves* and **Hehlen** *conceal*, **Söhnen** *to the sons* and **sehnen** *long for*.

Ü—To pronounce *short* and *long* ü proceed as with ö, attempting to pronounce the *i* of *pin* and the *ee* of *meet* respectively. Or, perhaps in a more practical manner, purse the lips as in whistling, then as above.

NOTE.—As in the case of ö, if the lips are not carefully rounded then the *i* part alone of the sound will be heard—again a peculiarity of South German. Compare the rhymes **Blick : zurück** and **fliehet : glühet**.

EXAMPLES :

Short ü—**dünn** *thin*, **füllen** *fill*.

Long ü—**fühlen** *feel*, **kühlen** *cool*.

NOTE.—Distinguish between **müssen** *must* and **missen** *miss*, **küssen** *kiss* and **Kissen** *cushion*.

Consonants.

Those difficult to pronounce are **ch**, **g**, **l**, **r**, **s** and **z**.

Ch—This sound is heard in Scotch but not in English. It is a *guttural* or *palatal spirant* according as it follows the *guttural* (back) vowels (**a**, **o**, **u**, **au**), or the *palatal* (front) vowels (**e**, **i**, **ei**, **ä**, **ö**, **ü**, **eu**, **äu**) or *consonants*. To produce the proper sound place the vocal organs in the position assumed in pronouncing the preceding vowel and then try to pronounce *sh*. *A*+*sh* will give the German **ach** if care be taken not to bring the teeth any closer together, and also not to make the click heard in pronouncing *k*. Similarly *i*+*sh* will give the German **ich**.

In the former case the student will note that the point of the tongue presses *lightly* against the lower teeth, in the latter quite *firmly*.

Examples:

Guttural **ch**—**Buch** *book*, **Dach** *roof*, **lachen** *laugh*, **Rauch** *smoke*, **Loch** *hole*.

Palatal **ch**—**ich** *I*, **echt** *genuine*, **Bücher** *books*, **durch** *through*, **reich** *rich*, **Milch** *milk*.

Note.—Distinguish between **Rauch** *smoke* and **rauh** *rough*, between **roch** *avenged* **roh** *rough* and **Rock** *coat*, between **Nachen** *boat* **Nacken** *neck* **nahen** *approach* and **naschen** *nibble*.
Also between **rächen** *avenge* and **recken** *stretch*, between **dich** *thee* **dick** *thick* and **Tisch** *table*.

G—The main difficulty in pronouncing **g** is when it is *final*. It is then sounded as **ch** would be in the same position. The student is therefore referred to that paragraph.

Examples:

Final guttural **g**—**Tag** *day*, **bog** *bent*, **Zug** *train*.

Final palatal **g**—**Honig** *honey*, **Weg** *way*, **Berg** *mountain*

L—German l is more forward on the tongue than the English, and as a consequence does not affect the quality of the preceding vowel sound as does the English *l*. To produce it, let the tip of the tongue strike the upper gum just above the teeth when completing the sound.

EXAMPLES:

sollen *shall*, **wollen** *will*, **wohl** *well*.

NOTE.—Distinguish between German **all** and English *all*.

R—The *trilled* **r** is still widely prevalent in Germany, although it is *being superseded* by a *guttural uvular* **r**, which, however, can be acquired in childhood only. Students are, therefore, advised to practice the *trilled* **r**.

EXAMPLES:

rennen *run*, **reden** *speak*, **Harke** *rake*, **Herz** *heart*.

NOTE.—English *r* is peculiar for its influence on the quality of the preceding vowel, German **r** *does not affect* the quality. Therefore **Stern** *star*, never sounds like *stern*, nor **er** *he*, like *er* in *her*. Pronounce hĕ-ren, not hĕr-en, *hear*, *i.e.*, complete the vowel sound before beginning the **r**

A combination which fully illustrates the difficulties English-speaking people have in pronouncing German **o**, **l** and **r** is **eine Rolle Garn**, *a spool of thread*. The author knows personally a lady who was once unable to make that simple purchase, though she was very proficient in the language and was especially careful in matters of pronunciation. Grammars, for the most part, fail to emphasize these points.

S and **Z**—The difficulties English-speaking students find in these sounds can best be illustrated by distinguishing a few words. For example, let the student distinguish between the German and English words **sinken** and *sink*, **singen** and *sing*, **Sonne** and *sun*. Distinguish also between **reisen** *travel* and **reissen** *tear*, **weisen** *show* and **weissen** *whiten*. In all these

the *single* **s** has the sound of our *z*. The German **z**, on the contrary, *never* has that sound. **Zeit** *time* is pronounced as if written *tsīte*, **zu** *to* as if written *tsoo*.

EXAMPLES:

singen *sing*, **Sache** *thing*, **Sack** *sack*, **Seite** *side*, **sausen** *whiz*, **genesen** *recover*.

Ziel *aim*, **ziehen** *draw*, **Ziegel** *tile*.

Sp, St—English students very frequently fail to aspirate the **s** in **sp, st** beginning words.

NOTE.—Distinguish between German and English *sp* and *st*, **spinnen** *spin*, **springen** *spring*, **Stein** *stone*, **Stock** *stick*.

SYLLABIFICATION.

German words are divided as they are pronounced. When, therefore, it is necessary to divide a word at the end of a line, the following rules will guide the student:

1. A single consonant between vowels goes with the succeeding vowel—**tra-gen** *not* **trag-en**.

NOTE.—**ch, ph, sch, sz, th, dt** are treated as a single consonant. Thus, **wei-chen, drau-ssen.** *Usage varies* with sp, st, tz, pf, **krat-zen** or **kra-tzen. rpf** and **mpf** are divided **r-pf** and **m-pf, käm-pfen.** Any consonant followed by **st,** *e. g.*, **gekünstelt** is divided thus, **gekün-stelt.**

2. Of two or more consonants between vowels, the last only goes to the next syllable, except in the cases noted above—**Bran-dung.**

NOTE.—**ck** becomes **k-k. Stücke** is divided **Stük-ke.**

3. Compounds are divided according to their component parts—**ver-eiteln, Baum-ast, Glücks-ritter.**

PUNCTUATION.

In German there is a much more frequent use made of the comma than in English. In addition to the rules holding good in English, students should note the following :—

1. While all parenthetical clauses are set off by commas, such words as correspond to *however*, *moreover*, etc., are not so treated.

Mein Vater indessen sagte gar nichts. *My father, however, said nothing.* **Er brachte mir jedoch ein Geschenk.** *He brought me a present, after all.*

2. All subordinate, supine and infinitive clauses, which are really subordinate *in force*, are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

Er sagte, dass er kommen würde, *He said that he would come.* **Der Mann, den Sie sahen, war mein Vater,** *The man whom you saw was my father.* **Er kam, um meinen Bruder zu sehen,** *He came to see my brother.* **Das ist eine Art, sich berühmt zu machen,** *That's one way of becoming famous.*

SCRIPT.

It is not absolutely necessary for a student in an English school to write German script. Many Germans can no longer do that. Roman script and Roman type are rapidly crowding out the German, being used in nearly all scientific books and being advocated by physicians and scientific men generally. If, however, German script is used, certain differences in the use of the hyphen, quotation marks, etc., will need to be observed.

When writing German script, a hyphen is made by a double stroke (=), quotation marks are set thus „. . . . . " and emphasis is indicated by spacing the letters or, in the case of einen, by an acute accent. Examples: bin=den, „Eile mit Weile," Ich wollte nur einen Hut or Ich wollte nur éinen Hut, *I wanted only one hat.* If Roman script and type is used, English usage is the correct one.

The observing student will at once notice an interchange of ſs, ſſ and ß. The last is used instead of ſs at the *end of a word* and of ſſ *before t* or *after a long vowel or diphthong.* Thus: wiſſen *know,* weiß *I know,* Fuß *foot,* Fußes *of a foot,* Schuß *shot,* Schuſſes *of a shot.*

When Roman letters are used ß appears as *ss, sz* (see Clarendon Press edition of the *Belagerung von Antwerpen*) or ſs which the official rules prescribe. Following the example of many scientific men, and the advice of grammarians, *ss* has everywhere been used in these exercises.

ORDER OF WORDS.

In studying the order or arrangement of words in a German sentence, we make the regular principal sentence the starting point. We use the word *subject* in the wide sense of *the subject word with all its modifiers. Personal verb* means the part inflected, in simple tenses the verb itself, in compound tenses the auxiliary.

The Regular Principal Sentence.

The order here is *subject, verb, verbal modifiers.* Thus: **Wir lesen eine Zeitung,** *We are reading a newspaper.* **Die Dame singt schön,** *The lady sings beautifully.* **Wir gehen nach Hause,** *We are going home.* **Wir reisen morgen nach Toronto,**

We shall go to Toronto to-morrow. **Mein Bruder ist gestern nach Toronto mit dem Zug gereist,** *My brother went to Toronto by train yesterday.* Of verbal modifiers and complements, pronouns precede nouns, the indirect precedes the direct object, adverbs of time precede objects, names of persons precede names of things, adverbial expressions rank as follows: *time, place, cause, manner.* These general rules are so often departed from, that, for further information, teachers and students should carefully study good modern authors. They will then find that it is impossible to lay down more definite rules in this case, and will, moreover, at once observe that in this respect the German language is rapidly changing.

Inverted Principal Sentence.

The most simple sentence of this kind is a question: **Wann gehen Sie nach Toronto?** *When do you go to Toronto?* **Ich gehe morgen Abend,** *I go to-morrow evening,* might be the answer. Rule: *If any verbal modifier, whether a single word, phrase or clause, be placed first, then the subject must follow the personal verb.* Thus: **Gestern Abend kam er nach Hause,** *He came home last night.* The position of every other member of the sentence remains the same.

This arrangement of a sentence is often to be preferred to the regular order, especially when there are three or four verbal modifiers in a sentence. For instance, suppose the sentence to be: **Die Vögel singen jeden Morgen im Garten meines Vaters aus reiner Freude wunderschön,** *From pure joy the birds in my father's garden sing exquisitely every morning.* This is a loose, disjointed sentence and would read much better if it were arranged thus: **Jeden morgen aus reiner Freude singen die Vögel wunderschön im Garten meines Vaters.** This also illustrates another rule, that short modifiers precede long ones.

Here again teachers and students are advised to consult and study some good authors, *e.g.*, Freytag or Heyse.

Dependent Sentence Order.

Should a sentence be introduced by any conjunction except **und, aber, allein, sondern, oder, denn,** or by a relative pronoun, then the personal verb comes last, the position of every other member of the sentence remaining the same. For instance, the simple sentence, **Ich werde morgen um zehn Uhr kommen,** if given in reported speech would run thus: **Er sagte, dass er morgen um zehn Uhr kommen würde,** *He said that he would come to-morrow at ten o'clock.* Again: **Der Mann, den wir gestern auf dem Bahnhof sahen, war ein Deutscher,** *The man whom we saw at the station yesterday was a German.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

The use of the passive in German is *much more restricted* than in English. Only transitive verbs, *i.e.*, those which take an accusative of the object, can be used personally in the passive; for others substitutes must be used. These are

1. Generally **man** with the active verb: **Man hat mir geraten,** *I have been advised.*

2. The reflexive verb, *with* or *without* **lassen**: **Der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden,** *The key has been found.*

Das lässt sich hören, *That idea can be entertained.*

3. An impersonal construction: **Es ist mir geraten worden,** *I have been advised.*

This impersonal passive is used very frequently to make a general reference: **Es wird getanzt,** *There is dancing.* **Es wurde viel gesungen,** *There was a good deal of singing.*

The auxiliary of the passive voice is **werden**: **Die Häuser werden jetzt gebaut**, *The houses are being built.* **Die Häuser sind im 15ten Jahrhundert gebaut worden**, *The houses were being built in the 15th century.*

NOTE.—This auxiliary with the past participle always translates the English *is building, is being built.* The **man**-*construction* can also be used: **Man baut das Haus**, *The house is building.*

There is a distinction between the use of **werden** and **sein** with the past participle. In the latter case it is only a semi-passive denoting *completion, state.* To TEST whether **werden** or **sein** is to be used as an auxiliary, the student should turn the phrase into the active; *if the progressive form is used,* then **werden** is the auxiliary. For instance, **Die Thür wurde geschlossen** translates *the door was shut* (*every day*), or *was being shut*; **Die Thür war geschlossen** translates *the door was shut* (we found it so). If this be turned into the active voice, it reads, *he was shutting the door,* or, in the second case, *he shut the door.*

There is one case in which it is *absolutely impossible* to translate the English passive by the German passive form. It is when the English form is followed by an infinitive or present participle.

He was seen to fall, **Man sah ihn fallen**. *He was found lying on the roadside*, **Man fand ihn am Wege liegen.**

The agent of the passive (*i.e.* the subject of the active verb), is expressed by **von** *with the dative.*

Der Hund wird von dem Knaben geschlagen, *The dog is being beaten by the boy.*

NOTE.—In ordinary conversation and in colloquial German, **dass** is very commonly omitted, in which case the order is *regular.*

INDIRECT NARRATION OR REPORTED SPEECH.

Here again, as is the case with every living growing language, it is not possible to lay down fixed and unalterable rules.

In English, in changing to reported speech the imperfect is used. This is also the usage in German conversation and in writing, where the form of the pres. subj. would be the same as in the indic.

He said, "I am sick." — **Er sagte, "Ich bin krank."**

He said he was sick. — **Er sagte, dass er krank wäre** (conversation); **sei** is quite correct and would perhaps be preferred in writing.

NOTE.—The indicative would be used in the independent sentence, when emphasis is laid on the *fact*. In conversation this is also the case.

They said, "We have seen your father." — **Sie sagten, "Wir haben Ihren Vater gesehen."**

They said they had seen your father. — **Sie sagten, dass sie Ihren Vater gesehen hätten** (not pres. **haben**).

In written German, however, the best usage inclines perhaps to the use of the tense of the direct speech, except in the case noted above. Even this rule can not be uniformly followed, because weak verbs lack a distinctive form for the past subjunctive, while the singular of the present subjunctive *does* contain distinct forms (2 and 3 p. sg.).

He said to me: "I have bought a new coat."

Er sagte mir: "Ich habe einen neuen Rock gekauft."

He told me that he had bought a new coat.

Er sagte mir, { **er habe einen neuen Rock gekauft.**
{ **dass er einen neuen Rock gekauft habe.**

NOTE.—**dass** may be omitted in such sentences, in which case the order of the dependent sentence is *regular*.

The case in which there is a change of tense in the same sentence may seem peculiar. For instance (I use the sentence quoted in the H. S. Gram., p. 306): **Auch schloss er, es müsse die Sage vom Glas-männlein nicht sehr bekannt sein, und den Spruch müssten nur wenige wissen,** *He concluded, too, that the legend of the Glass-manikin could not be very well known, and only a few people could know the verse.*

The student, however, will observe that while the 3 sing. pres. subj. *differs* in form from the same person of the indicative, the plural subj. *agrees* in form with the indic. plural. The author, therefore, used the past subj. in the second case because the form differs from the indicative.

To sum up: The one great aim in the use of tense in Indirect narration is clearness. In writing, all things considered, the tense of the speaker is preferred, but must not be used if clearness is sacrificed. In conversation the usage is similar to the English, *i.e.*, the past tense is used, and in general that of the indicative, except when uncertainty is strongly emphasized.

THE PARTICIPLES IN ENGLISH AND GERMAN.

The use of the participles, especially of the present, which is so common in English, is *much more restricted in German.* Generally speaking, the use of the present participle, except attributively, is avoided in German, though it is used in elevated prose, or in rapid narration, when the action expressed by it is contemporaneous with the action of the principal verb. In ordinary prose or in conversation even this would be avoided. Thus: **Dies Alles bei mir denkend, schlief ich ein,** *Thinking on all this, I fell asleep.*

The past participle is used very frequently in this way: **Von der Wahrheit des Berichts überzeugt, machte der General**

seine **Anstalten zum Rückzug,** *Convinced of the truth of the report, the general made preparations for the retreat.*

As in English, so in German, the present participle may be used attributively and appositively. Thus: **Ein liebender Bruder,** *A loving brother;* **Da sass er weinend,** *There he sat weeping.*

A very common construction in written German, is the use of the participle as an attributive adjective preceded by its own modifiers. Thus: **Ein auf dem Hügel stehendes Haus,** *A house standing on a hill;* **Eine von einer Mauer umgebene Stadt,** *a city surrounded by a wall.* This construction is seldom, if ever, used in conversation, but can often be used very advantageously in writing, to avoid a too frequent occurrence of dependent clauses.

With the above exceptions, the rule is to change the English participle into a dependent clause, relative or adverbial, according to its force.

Having seen them all, he returned home satisfied, **Nachdem er sie alle gesehen hatte, kehrte er zufrieden nach Hause zurück.**

Hearing the news, he became very excited, **(Sobald) als er die Nachricht hörte, wurde er sehr aufgeregt.**

The man carrying the box is a brother of our neighbour, **Der Mann, der die Kiste trägt, ist ein Bruder unsers Nachbars.**

Instead of the dependent clause, use may be made of the numerous prepositional phrases to be found in German.

Having suffered great loss, the enemy yielded ground, **Mit grossem Verlust wich der Feind zurück.**

This method of avoiding a repetition of dependent clauses cannot be observed too carefully.

Sometimes the idea expressed by the participle is of as great, or of even greater importance, than that expressed by the finite verb. In this case, it is best to resolve the participle into a finite verb, and connect the sentences by **und**. Thus: *He stood on the bridge, looking down at the water,* **Er stand auf der Brücke und sah auf das Wasser hinunter**; *He remained in his room all day writing letters,* **Er blieb den ganzen Tag auf seinem Zimmer und schrieb Briefe.**

With **kommen** the past participle is used for the English present, and with the verbs **bleiben, gehen, reiten, fahren,** the infinitive is used with the same sense. Thus:

Er kam angelaufen.	*He came running up.*
Ich werde stehen bleiben.	*I will remain standing.*
Ich gehe spazieren.	*I am going for a walk.*

Verbal Nouns in -ing.

These must not be confused with participles. Thus: *The fighting lasted all day,* **Das Gefecht dauerte den ganzen Tag**; *The child stopped laughing,* **Das Kind hörte auf, zu lachen.**

The student has only to substitute an infinitive, if possible, or a common noun, for this form in -ing, to know how to translate.

If the verbal noun occurs after a preposition in a phrase expressing time, etc., it is generally best to translate by a dependent clause.

I wish you would write the letter before going down town, **Ich möchte, dass Sie den Brief schreiben, ehe Sie in die Stadt gehen.**

SELECT VOCABULARY

OF WORDS OF MOST FREQUENT OCCURRENCE.

It is quite possible that this select vocabulary may contain a few words that do not seem very common to some readers, and it is much more probable that others will miss very many commonly used words. Two hundred and fifty words, however carefully selected, is a small vocabulary, and yet it is also a good nucleus. If every student of German had 2,000 words and phrases at his command, how easy a matter conversation, reading and writing in German would be! And at a minimum of *ten* words a day, well learned, the task would not be a very long one. Some have even done better by getting up 400 to 500 words without any thought of context, and then, by reading easy texts, have rapidly increased their vocabulary and made wonderful progress in the language. Learning to speak and write a language is merely a matter of memory, and neither requires nor gives any great amount of intellectual training. That comes when one is far enough advanced to study the literature and language critically and historically.

Many of my own students, and those especially who become proficient, keep a note-book, small enough to slip into the vest pocket, and in it they write down the new words met with in reading and the English equivalent opposite. Then by covering one column with the hand they are able to practice self-drill. I know of no better way to acquire a vocabulary. It looks like drudgery, but a vocabulary must be acquired, no matter what language is studied, and the sooner the mere memory-work is over the better.

Students are, therefore, recommended to set to work at this select vocabulary and thoroughly memorize it, even before beginning the exercises, and then to increase it as fast as possible, by thoroughly memorizing the vocabulary of each exercise, German and English. The *articles*, *pronouns*, *prepositions* and *conjunctions*, which occur in every line of German, are not included in this select vocabulary, as they are to be found in convenient lists in every grammar.

SELECT VOCABULARY.

WORLD.	DIE WELT, W.
heaven, sky	der Himmel, s.
earth	die Erde, w.
sun	die Sonne, w.
moon	der Mond, s. —e.
star	der Stern, s. — e.
water	das Wasser, s.
fire	das Feuer, s.
light	das Licht, s. —er.
wind	der Wind, s. —e.
storm	der *Sturm, s. — e.
air	die *Luft, s. —e.

TIME.	DIE ZEIT, W.
moment	der Augenblick, s. —e.
minute	die Minute, w.
hour	die Stunde, w.
day	der Tag, s. —e.
week	die Woche, w.
month	der Monat, s. —e.
year	das Jahr, s. —e.
morning	der Morgen, s.
noon	der Mittag, s.
afternoon	der Nachmittag, s.
evening	der Abend, s. — e.
night	die *Nacht, s. —e.

SEASONS, MONTHS AND DAYS.	DIE JAHRESZEITEN, MONATE UND TAGE.
Spring	der Frühling, s. —e.
Summer	der Sommer, s.
Autumn	der Herbst, s. —e.
Winter	der Winter, s.
January	der Januar.
February	der Februar.
March	der März.
April	der April.
May	der Mai.
June	der Juni.
July	der Juli.
August	der August.
September	der September.
October	der Oktober.
November	der November.
December	der Dezember.
Sunday	der Sonntag.
Monday	der Montag.
Tuesday	der Dienstag.
Wednesday	der Mittwoch.
Thursday	der Donnerstag.
Friday	der Freitag.
Saturday	der Sonnabend.

THE COUNTRY.	DAS *LAND, S. —ER.
mountain	der Berg, s. —e.
valley	das *Thal, s. — er.
village	das *Dorf, s. — er.
forest	der *Wald, s. —er.
road	der Weg, s. —e.
field	das Feld, s. — er.
tree	der *Baum, s. —e.
river	der *Fluss, s.—e.

THE TOWN.	DIE *STADT, S. —E.
church	die Kirche, w.
market	der *Markt, s. —e.

street	die Strasse, w.
shop	der *Laden, s.
merchant	der *Kaufmann, s. —er.
business	das Geschäft, s. —e.
people	die Leute.

The School.	Die Schule, w.
teacher	der Lehrer, s.
pupil	der Schüler, s.
book	das *Buch, s. —er.
page	die Seite, w.
place (in a book)	die Stelle, w.
paper	das Papier, s. —e.
pen	die Feder, w.
letter	der Brief, s. —e.
leaf	das *Blatt, s. —er.

The Family.	Die Familie, w.
father	der *Vater, s.
mother	die *Mutter, s.
brother	der *Bruder, s.
sister	die Schwester, w.
son	der *Sohn, s.
daughter	die *Tochter, s.
parents	die Eltern.
husband, man	der *Mann, s. —er.
wife, woman	die Frau, w.
child	das Kind, s. —er.
boy	der Knabe, w.
girl	das Mädchen, s.
Mr., gentleman	Herr (der), w.
lady	die Dame, w.
Mrs.	Frau, w.
Miss, young lady	Fräulein (das), s.
friend	der Freund, s. —e.

Man.	Der Mensch, w.
head	der *Kopf, s. —e.
face	das Gesicht, s. —e.
hair	das Haar, s. —e.
eye	das Auge, n.
nose	die Nase, w.
mouth	der Mund, s.
ear	das Ohr, n.
arm	der Arm, s. —e.
hand	die *Hand, s. —e.
foot	der *Fuss, s. —e.
tongue	die Zunge, w.
heart	das Herz, n.

House.	Das *Haus, s. —er.
door	die Thür, w.
room	das Zimmer, s.
wall	die *Wand, s. —e.
floor	der *Fussboden, s.
ceiling	die Decke, w.
window	das Fenster, s.
stairs	die Treppe, w.
roof	das *Dach, s. —er.
table	der Tisch, s. —e.
chair	der *Stuhl, s. —e.
picture	das Bild, s. —er.
knife	das Messer, s.
clock	die Uhr, w.
glass	das *Glas, s. —er.
bed	das Bett, n.

Abstracts.	Abstrakte.
truth	die Wahrheit, w.
kind, sort, manner	die Art, w.
name	der Name, n.
joy	die Freude, w.
pleasure	das Vergnügen, s.
hope	die Hoffnung, w.
right	das Recht, s.
wrong	das Unrecht, s.
end	das Ende, n.
company, society	die Gesellschaft, w.
case	der *Fall, s. —e.
thought	der Gedanke, n.
honor	die Ehre, w.
belief	der Glaube, n.
word	das *Wort, s. —er.
affair	die Sache, w.
thing	das Ding, s. —e.
deed	die That, w.
desire	die *Lust, s. —e.
story	die Geschichte, w.
work	die Arbeit, w.
language	die Sprache, w.

Verbs.	Zeitwörter (Verba).
be	sein, irr, s.
have	haben, w.
become	werden, a, u, o.
dare, be allowed	durfen, ppres.
like, may	mögen, ppres.
can	können, ppres.
must	müssen, ppres.
shall	sollen, ppres.

will	wollen, ppres.
let	lassen, ie, a.
know	wissen, ppres; kennen, irr, w.
speak	sprechen, a, o.
say	sagen, w.
ask	fragen, w.
answer	antworten, w.
understand	verstehen, irr, s.
believe	glauben, w.
wish	wünschen, w.
love	lieben, w.
hope	hoffen, w.
give	geben, a, e.
thank	danken, w.
live	leben, w.
see	sehen, a, e.
look for	suchen, w.
hear	hören, w.
go, walk	gehen, irr, s.
come	kommen, a, o.
fall	fallen, ie, a.
stand	stehen, irr, s.
take	nehmen, a, o.
find	finden, a, u.
carry, wear	tragen, u, a.
bring	bringen, irr, w.
learn	lernen, w.
read	lesen, a, e.
write	schreiben, ie, ie.
forget	vergessen, a, e.
tell, relate	erzählen, w.
think	denken, irr, w.
think, consider	meinen, w.
do	thun, irr, s.
ask, beg	bitten, a, e.
remain	bleiben, ie, ie.
hold	halten, ie, a.
help	helfen, a, o.

Adjectives and Adverbs.	Adjectiva und Adverbia.
good	gut, artig.
bad (worthless)	schlecht.
bad (harmful)	schlimm.
large, tall	gross.
small	klein.
high	hoch.
deep	tief.
long	lang.
short	kurz.
warm	warm.
cold	kalt.
clean, pure	rein.
heavy, difficult	schwer.
light, easy	leicht.
strong, stout	stark.
weak	schwach
ill	krank.
red	roth.
white	weiss.
black	schwarz.
stupid	dumm.
old	alt.
young	jung.
sharp	scharf.
quick	schnell.
false	falsch.
true	wahr.
happy	glücklich.
full	voll.
beautiful	schön.
poor	arm.
rich	reich.
natural, of course	natürlich.
dangerous	gefährlich.
at home	zu Hause.
home (motion towards)	nach Hause.
always	immer, je.
never	nimmer, nie, niemals.
soon	bald.
just, exactly	gerade, eben.
once	einmal.
late	spät.
early	früh.
almost	fast.
far	weit.
entirely	ganz (und gar).
really	wirklich.
often	oft.
near	nah.
now	nun, jetzt.
there	da, dort.
seldom	selten.
to-day	heute.
to-morrow	morgen.
yesterday	gestern.

PART I.

EXERCISES

WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO

POINTS IN GRAMMAR.

EXERCISES

WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO POINTS IN GRAMMAR.

1.

Use of the Article.

Ich kenne einen Geschäftsmann hier in der Stadt, der früher Soldat gewesen ist. Er ist jetzt Buchhändler und hat einen Laden in der Wilhelmstrasse, wo ich zwei oder dreimal die Woche hingehe, um Bücher zu kaufen. Vor ein paar Tagen kaufte ich bei ihm eine Grammatik und ein Wörterbuch, auch drei Novellen zu vier Mark das Stück, und er hat sie nicht mit auf die Rechnung gesetzt, aber als Ehrenmann habe ich ihn natürlich daran gemahnt. Er erzählt mir oftmals von seinen Reisen; ganz in der letzten Zeit hat er das Land, "wo die Citronen blühen," das schöne Italien, besucht, und auch die Schweiz, das Land der Berge. Er hat den Montblanc und auch den Vesuv bestiegen.

The man there yonder is a book-seller. I was in his shop on King street Monday to buy a grammar and dictionary. He showed me some beautiful books at six marks apiece, but the smaller ones cost four. He gets books from England and Switzerland twice a week, and pictures as well, of which he has many in his shop. There were some charming ones of Mount Blanc, of Vesuvius, of France and of sunny Italy. The book-seller is himself an Englishman and was a soldier, but is now well-known in town as a business-man.

2.

Strong Declension of Nouns; Strong and Weak Verbs.

In der Stadt, wo mein Vater wohnt, ist das Rathhaus sehr alt. Es war im 16ten Jahrhundert gebaut. Die Zimmer sind meistens gross, eins aber besonders breit, und die Wände mit sehr schönen Bildern behängt. In allen ist der Boden aus Stein. Das Dach ist nicht mit Stroh gedeckt, wie es bei so vielen Häusern der Dörfer in diesem Theil des Landes der Fall ist, sondern mit Ziegeln. Ausser dem Rathhaus ist kein einziges Gebäude der Stadt interessant. Die Wohnhäuser der Bürger sind meistens klein, entweder aus Holz oder Backsteinen gebaut. Die Fenster sind sehr klein, die Dächer niedrig, und aus diesem Grunde sind die Zimmer der Häuser sehr dunkel. Die Wege in der Stadt, und überhaupt im ganzen Lande, sind nicht gut, und man kann bei schlechtem Wetter unmöglich viel umherfahren. Mein Vater gedenkt aber nächsten Frühling nach L—— zu ziehen, da wird es uns hoffentlich besser gefallen.

Well, I hope it will please you here, but the town is really not interesting. The citizens' houses are mostly small and old, the roofs very low and covered with straw, the windows small, and for that reason the rooms much too dark. Besides, the roads are very bad, not only in town but in the whole country generally, so that it is impossible to drive around much in bad weather. The only large and handsome building in town is the town-hall, which was built in the 14th century. It is of red brick, the floors of stone and the roof covered with tiles. The rooms are mostly broad and particularly high and sunny, and the walls hung with beautiful pictures.

3.

Weak Nouns; Strong and Weak Verbs.

Gestern Abend befand sich eine Menge Menschen auf der Strasse vor der Wohnung des Herrn Doktor Schmidt. Sie thaten ihm die Ehre an, unter seinen Fenstern zu singen und zu spielen, wie es in vielen Gegenden Sitte ist. Er war nämlich eben von einer langen Weltreise zurückgekehrt und hatte viele fremde Nationen besucht. Die Stimmen der Menschen, als sie da sangen und spielten, klangen wirklich schön, und der berühmte Reisende freute sich sehr, sie zu hören. Nachdem die Musikanten sich ungefähr eine halbe Stunde da aufgehalten hatten, öffnete der Herr Doktor die Thür, und hielt eine kurze Rede, worin er sich bestens bedankte.

A.—What was the music in the street last night?

B.—O! there was a crowd of people singing and playing in front of Dr. Smith's house. As you know, this famous traveller has been in Asia, and has seen a great many strange people and strange customs. He has just got back.

A.—It is quite an honour, isn't it, when people sing and play in front of one's house.

B.—Yes, indeed.

A.—How long were the musicians there?

B.—I suppose about two hours. Dr. Smith was so pleased with the music that he made quite a long speech in returning his thanks. Afterwards he told them much that was interesting about his travels in strange countries, and also showed them some charming pictures of the men and women, towns, houses and shops which are to be seen there.

4.

Mixed Declension — Verbs.

Seit dem Frieden, welcher den Krieg von 1870-71 beschloss, steht das deutsche Reich in herrlicher Einigkeit da. Die Hoffnungen, welche "Das Junge Deutschland" im Herzen hegte, hatten sich zu den schönsten Blüthen entfaltet. Der Glaube der Idealisten hatten triumphiert, die Ritter des Gedankens und die Ritter vom Schwert hatten nicht vergeblich gekämpft, der Funke der Begeisterung zündete in jedem deutschen Herzen, und der Name "Wilhelm" und "Barbarossa" ertönte in Lied und Sang von der neuerschaffenen Herrlichkeit des Reiches.

Als ich vor mehreren Jahren im Schwarzwald lebte, hatte ich einen alten Bauer zum Nachbar. Er war ein Mann von geringer Bildung, aber von kindlich frommem Glauben und eisernem Willen. Er war ein Kind des Forstes, sein Vater war Kohlenbrenner gewesen, und seine Vorfahren trieben dieselbe Beschäftigung. Mein Nachbar war aber als junger Mann zu einem seiner Vettern gegangen, der ein Gut besass, und nachdem er ihm zwanzig Jahre treu gedient, hatte er diesem Vetter sein kleines Gut abgekauft. Der Mann war ein echter Schwarzwälder von hohem kräftigem Wuchs, hatte ein starkknochiges Gesicht, und ein treues Herz blickte aus den blauen Augen. Seine Kleidung war einfach, denn er trug stets eine kurze Jacke und hohe Stiefel, jedoch im Hause meistens Holzpantoffeln. Er war das Muster eines treuen Unterthans.

The German Empire, as it now stands, is a glorious realization of the thoughts and hopes which all patriotic Germans had long cherished in their hearts, and for which so many swords were drawn in the war of '70-'71. The names "Germany" and "William" resound through the whole land in songs full

of inspiration, and like sparks they kindle the faith in all young hearts that a still greater glory is in store for the Fatherland.

The peasants who live in the Black Forest are strong and tall, and have strongly-marked features. As a rule they are children of the forest, carrying on the same occupations as their forefathers. Their clothing is simple and costs very little. They usually wear wooden shoes, and a short jacket instead of a coat, those who are raftsmen, however, wearing red shirts and top boots. Their houses, though small, are light and sunny, and are patterns of cleanliness. Though in general without education, they are remarkable for a simple childlike faith, and out of their blue eyes shines the firm will and true heart of the good subject. As soldiers, therefore, they are brave and bold, and as neighbours kindly and helpful.

5.

Review of Declensions and of Verbs.

Joseph Privat de Molières pflegte stets im Bett zu arbeiten. Eines Tages ging seine Nichte, welche ihm den Haushalt führte, mit dem Dienstmädchen aus, und der berühmte Gelehrte blieb allein zu Hause. Da schlich sich ein Dieb in das Wohnzimmer ein. "Was wollen Sie hier?" fragte Molières. "Ich will Ihr Geld," rief drohend der Dieb. Ruhig und gelassen antwortete der Gelehrte: "Mein ganzes Geld liegt in jenem Tisch in der Schublade links. Öffnen Sie dieselbe und nehmen Sie das Geld heraus. Aber bringen Sie mir um des Himmels willen meine Papiere nicht in Unordnung!" Nachdem der Spitzbube alles Geld beigesteckt hatte, wollte er eiligst sich aus dem Staube machen und vergass, die Thüre hinter sich zu schliessen. "Mein Herr, haben Sie auch meine Papiere ruhig liegen lassen?" rief ihm Molières nach. "Ja wohl!" lautete die Antwort. "Schön, dann thun Sie mir nur noch den Gefallen, die Thür ordentlich zuzumachen; denn es zieht gewaltig."

It is reported that a burglar once came to the house of the famous savant Molières, who was in the habit of retiring early. When the burglar entered the bedroom he found the learned man studying in bed, as he very often did when tired.

"Who are you, and what do you want here?" asked Molières calmly.

"Never mind my name, I want your money," answered the burglar threateningly.

"All I have, and that's very little, is in the right drawer of that table. Open it and take the money, but on no account disturb my papers."

After the thief had pocketed all the money, he left the room in such a hurry that he did not shut the door.

"You didn't disturb my papers, did you?" Molières called after him.

"No, of course not," was the thief's answer.

"Well, then, please be good enough to close the door, for there is a frightful draught here and I don't want to catch cold."

6.

Inflection of Adjectives.

Der Ort, wo ich seit zwei Wochen wohne, ist ein sehr altes, interessantes Dörfchen. Der alte Wirth des hiesigen Gasthauses verdient ziemlich viel Geld, und seine hübschen Töchter sind sehr fleissig und helfen ihm viel dabei. Viele reiche Fremde kommen jeden Sommer hierher, besonders solche, die einen ganz ruhigen gesunden Aufenthalt suchen, wo sie sich von dem Lärm und der Aufregung der grossen Welt erholen können. Augenblicklich jedoch ist nur ein einziger Fremder da ausser mir. Der Sommer ist die rechte Erntezeit für den alten Wirth, da nur dieses einzige Gasthaus sich hier befindet.

In der wunderschönen Umgebung, nach allen Richtungen hin, findet man die allerherrlichsten Aussichten. Reizend sind die Wälder, die Bäche klar, die Berge leicht zu steigen ; im ganzen ist die weite Landschaft entzückend, und ich kann nur Gutes von Land und Leuten sagen.

Dear Old Boy :

Where is that wonderful, lovely Utopia, where you are now ? You write such long and, I might almost say, such gushing letters about the place and its charms, that I have almost decided to visit it. You say it lies on the bank of a broad, deep river. Is there any fishing there ? Are there good boats to rent ? Are the hotels good, and is the country around pretty ? I always take a holiday in the hot summer season, but am tired of visiting the same old places. I would like to find a new one, and according to your letters, that must be nice and quiet, and that is just what I want and must have. I suppose prices are not high in such a place, and that would please me, too, for I have spent a good deal of money this year. I should probably stay five or six weeks, and would like a rather large and sunny room if I could get one. Please let me hear from you soon.

Yours,

L.

7.

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs.

Lauterberg, den 13ten Juni, 1895.

Mein lieber Freund !

Das letzte Mal habe ich Ihnen aus einem kleinen Dorf geschrieben. Letzten Freitag kam ich hier an. Dies ist ein etwas grösseres Städtchen, wo ich mich ja längere Zeit aufhalten muss. Es liegt auch in einem Thal, welches breiter ist als

beim Dorfchen, schöner ist es aber nicht. Man kann bessere Gasthäuser hier finden, doch freundlichere Wirthe nicht. Wissen Sie, ich mag lieber in kleineren Städten als in den grösseren wohnen, am liebsten in einer, die an einem See liegt. Das ist die beste Lage, die ich mir nur denken kann. Hier habe ich meinen ältesten Bruder getroffen, und wir haben zusammen unsere Verwandten besucht. Sie haben uns auf's freundlichste empfangen und wir mussten den grossten Theil unserer freien Zeit bei ihnen zubringen. Am interessantesten in der Stadt ist das Rathhaus, welches im 15ten Jahrhundert gebaut worden war. In meinem nächsten Brief werde ich Ihnen Weiteres über die Stadt und Umgebung mittheilen.

Ihr treuer,

J. M.

Dear Friend:

In my last letter I described the little village in which I was then staying, and the beautiful scenery around it. I am now in a much larger place, where our relatives live, as you already know, but I do not like it as well here as in my former stopping place. The village was on the shore of one of the most beautiful lakes I have ever seen. However, in the town there are larger hotels and more of them, though most of the landlords are not so obliging as the one in the village. The most interesting building here is the old town hall, though St. John's church is still older. My uncle received me in a most cordial fashion. He is one of the richest men here and has the finest house in town, but I am democratic you know, and like best to live very quietly and simply, the simpler the better. So I do not like visiting rich relatives, and shall get away from here at the earliest possible moment.

Good-bye until my next.

Yours truly,

M. N.

8.

Numerals.

Vater—Nun, Karl, kannst du mir die Namen der Monate hersagen?

Söhnchen—Ja wohl, Papa; Januar, Februar, März, —ach! du weisst dass ich sie alle schon auswendig kenne.

V.—Nun gut, welcher ist der siebente Monat?

S.—August.

V.—Nein, Kind, das ist der achte.

S.—O, ja! Juli ist der siebente.

V.—Der zwölfte?

S.—Dezember.

V.—Haben alle Monate eine gleiche Zahl Tage?

S.—Nein, Papa, Februar hat nur acht und zwanzig. April, Juni, September und November haben 30, die übrigen 31.

V.—Wie viele Tage im ganzen Jahr?

S.—365, ausser im Schaltjahr, welcher 366 Tage hat.

V.—Wie viele Feiertage im Jahre?

S.—Das kommt nur auf die Regierung an. Hier in Canada sind Neujahr, Charfreitag, Ostermontag, der Königin Geburtstag, der erste Juli und Weihnachten gesetzliche Feiertage.

V.—Wann hat die Königin Geburtstag?

S.—Am vier und zwanzigsten Mai.

V.—Was wird am 1sten Juli gefeiert?

S.—Am ersten Juli 1867 traten einige Provinzen Canadas in eine engere Verbindung ein.

V.—Warum sagst du "einige"? Sind nicht alle der jetztigen Provinzen zu gleicher Zeit zusammen gekommen?

S.—Nein, nur die vier ältesten. Die andern schlossen sich nur allmählig an die Verbindung an.

Mrs. B.—I would like 2 lbs. of first-class butter.

Grocer.—Very well, madam, I have some excellent butter this morning at 18c. a lb. Would you like to taste it?

M. B.—Yes, if you please. This butter really tastes good; I will take 3 lbs. of it.

G.—Is there anything else this morning?

M. B.—I would like some strawberries, if you have nice fresh ones.

G.—I can recommend the berries out in front of the store. You won't find any better ones in town—they are 12c. a basket.

M. B.—Very well; let me have six baskets. You may also send me 10 lbs. of sugar, a lb. of good coffee, and half a lb. of black tea. Will you be able to send them soon?

G.—Yes; the boy will go in half an hour. Is there anything else you would like?

M. B.—No; that is all now. How much do I owe you altogether?

G.—$2.21.

M. B.—Can you change a bill?

G.—I am very sorry; I haven't quite enough change.

M. B.—It doesn't matter; I will pay the boy when he brings the things. My husband will be sure to have change.

9.

Personal Pronouns and Particles.

Guten Morgen, Frau Professor.

Guten Morgen, mein Kind, wie geht's dir? Nun, ist deine Mutter noch nicht zu Hause?

Doch, sie kam schon gestern Abend, sogar früher als wir sie erwarteten.

Wann ist sie denn angekommen?

Nun, sie kam mit dem Zuge, der um 10 Minuten nach fünf ankommt. Man muss aber das Gepäck holen lassen, das dauert ein paar Minuten, und dann ist der Bahnhof wenigstens eine gute Viertelstunde von hier. Ausserdem hatte der Zug sich ungefähr um 7 Minuten verspätet. Es war also fast drei Viertel (auf) sechs als Mama nach Hause kam.

Ihr Kinder habt euch wohl gefreut, die Mama wieder zu sehen!

Das versteht sich ja von selbst, Frau Professor.

Sie hat euch doch wohl Geschenke mitgebracht.

Ja wohl, sie hat sie uns aber erst heute Morgen gegeben.

Nun, ich möchte auch gern hören, was sie dir mitgebracht hat.

Ich möchte es dir lieber ein anderes Mal sagen. Ich muss nämlich gleich in die Stadt. Adieu.

Schön, auf das nächste Mal. Adieu, Kätchen.

At Dr. Johnson's House.

Mr. A.—Good morning, Mrs. Johnson; I was just going to knock. Is your husband at home?

Mrs. J.—I am sorry, but he is not. He went to town this morning about 9:45.

Mr. A.—When do you expect him back?

Mrs. J.—He intends coming by train, to-morrow afternoon. He will, I fancy, be here between 5 and 6, if the train is not late.

Mr. A.—Well, that is often the case you know in summer. There are so many travellers and so much baggage.

Mrs. J.—Yes, and in winter the snow is the hindrance. How are the children?

Mr. A.—Quite well, thank you. They were very glad to see their mother again.

Mrs. J.—Why, I didn't know she was home! When did she come?

Mr. A.—Just this morning. We expected her day before yesterday, but that very morning I got a letter saying that her mother was sick and she could not get away.

Mrs. J.—Surely her mother is not well already!

Mr. A.—No, not exactly, but she is better. She had caught a slight cold.

Mrs. J.—With elderly people that often means a good deal.

Mr. A.—Yes, indeed. Well, good-bye. I will try and see your husband the day after to-morrow.

10.

Adjectives, Pronouns, Simple Prepositions.

Die armen Mäuse hatten gar keine Ruhe vor der bösen schlauen Katze. Wenn sie noch so vorsichtig aus ihren Löchern herauskamen, war gewiss die Katze in der Nähe. Selbst in der dunkelsten Nacht waren die Mause nicht ausser Gefahr, denn die Katze kann auch bei Nacht sehen. So kamen sie eines Tages in aller Stille zusammen, in einen verborgenen Winkel, von dem die Katze nichts wusste, um mit einander Rath zu halten, wie sie sich vor der Feindin schützen könnten. Unter anderen kam ein junges Mäuschen, mit einem grossen weissen Fleck auf dem Kopf. Es war sehr stolz darauf und hielt sich für weit klüger als alle anderen Mäuse. Was es für einen Rath gab, und was die Folge davon war, werden wir aus der Geschichte schon erfahren.

In a certain house, which you children have often visited, there lived a very cunning old cat which was the deadly enemy of the poor little mice. Every time they came out of their holes

the wicked cat saw them and would try to catch them, for a cat can, as you know, see in the very darkest night. So they never had any peace and did not know how to protect themselves from the wicked creature. One day an old mouse called the others together in a quiet corner, where they were safe from their enemy, so that they might consider what they should do in their need. In this council there was a young mouse who was very proud, and thought itself much better than the rest because it was white and had a very long tail. It was in a great state of excitement because it had what it considered was a clever bit of advice to give. As is often the case, however, the little mouse, like a good many people, was not so clever as it thought, as we shall see when the story ends.

11.

Demonstratives.

In der Versammlung wurden allerlei Reden gehalten, die eine Maus sagte dies, die andere das, aber einen ordentlichen Rath wusste doch keine zu geben. Endlich trat ein junges Mäuschen hervor, es war dasjenige, welches den weissen Fleck auf dem Kopf hatte. "Ihr lieben Freunde," sagte das hübsche Ding, "ich will euch sagen, was wir thun müssen, damit wir von dieser bösen Katze nicht immer so geplagt werden." Alle Mäuse spitzten die Ohren um recht zu hören, was solch ein kluges Mäuschen zu sagen hatte. Dieses fuhr fort: "Wir müssen der Katze eine Schelle an den Schwanz hängen: wenn dieselbe dann herbeischleicht, hören wir das Klingeln und wir können uns schnell in unsere Löcher flüchten.

As I have already told you, the mice were considering what they should do. One said one thing and another another, but none of them had as yet made any sensible suggestion. After

the most of the mice had given their opinions, the little white mouse stood up and spoke as follows:

"My dear friends, permit me to tell you what appears to me to be a good scheme. Indeed, I expected that someone would have spoken of it." Of course all the other mice wanted to hear what the pretty little thing had to say, so they pricked up their ears and listened very attentively.

The little creature went on. "Would it not be a good idea to hang a bell on the cat's tail? If we did that we would hear the bell every time the sly old enemy crept up and could fly to our holes. I should like to hear what the rest of you think."

12.

Relatives.

Alle Mäuse waren ganz entzückt über den neuen Plan, den das kluge Mäuschen vorgeschlagen hatte; der Rath gefiel ihnen ausserordentlich und sie jubelten laut. Die alte erfahrene Maus, welche die Mäuse zusammengerufen hatte, legte dem Mäuschen die Pfote auf den Kopf, und sagte feierlich: "Du sollst gesegnet sein, meine Liebe, du bist es, die uns rettet." Wer die Schelle herbeigebracht hatte, war eine junge Maus, die gerne in der Kinderstube herumlief. Ihre Schwester holte jetzt ein rothes Band, welches sie auch in der Kinderstube gefunden hatte—es gehörte der schönen grossen Puppe, die ganz in Seide gekleidet dort in einem schönen weissen Bettchen lag. Die glücklichen Mäuse banden das Seidenband an die Schelle, welche ganz prächtig hell klang, und alles war fertig. Jetzt blieb nur übrig, der Katze die Schelle an den Schwanz anzuhängen.

As you may well believe, the other mice were delighted at the suggestion of their pretty sister, and every one thought that now they might hope to live in peace and safety. They all praised

the clever idea of the white mouse, whilst the dear little thing looked very modest and half ashamed because of the many flattering speeches that her companions made. At last, the old mouse called for silence, and as soon as they were all quiet she said: "I cannot tell you all how much the counsel of my dear friend pleases me. She is our deliverer. Long live our pretty friend!" The other mice cried out as with one voice, "Long live the white mouse!"

In a few moments the old mouse spoke again: "Who will bring me a bell?" "I have one," answered a little brown mouse. "And I have a pretty ribbon to hang it on with," called out the bright-eyed sister of the brown one, "I found it in a box in the bedroom. I believe it belongs to the black doll lying on the bed."

So the mice tied the silk ribbon on the little bell, and all that remained to do was to find the cat and hang the bell on her.

The result will be told in the next chapter.

13.

Interrogatives.

Es war grosse Freude unter der Mäuseschaar. "Nun ist es gut," sagten sie, "nun sind wir gerettet." Die alte kluge Maus gebot endlich Stille und sagte feierlich: "Jetzt ist unsere schlimme Zeit vorbei, nun kommen gute Tage für uns, denn die böse Katze wird uns nicht mehr fangen können. Wer will es jetzt unternehmen der Katze die Schelle anzuhängen, welche Maus kann das machen?" Alle Mäuse blieben aber still, sie sahen einander an, und ihre Blicke schienen zu fragen: "Was für eine Aufgabe ist das? Wenn wir ihr die Schelle anhängen, wird sie sich umwenden und uns auffressen, und welche von uns will aufgefressen werden? Wer sollte es in der That thun, als nur das kluge Weissköpfchen selbst?"

I cannot describe the joy of the mice as they looked at the bell with its pretty ribbon. They kept running up and down and saying to one another, "Who would have believed that our white sister was so clever? Now we will be safe from our foe! Who will be afraid of her now?" Again the old mouse called for silence and said: "Who does not hope that we will now be able to live in peace? What will our old enemy do now? She will no longer be able to catch any of us. But, friends, one thing yet remains, that is, to hang the bell on her tail. Who will do it? Who will thus win our everlasting gratitude?' But the mice had not thought of that, and now no one wanted to be eaten up. So they all looked at each other, but no one wanted to undertake the task. And so one by one they crept away from the council until only the poor little white mouse remained behind.

14.

Indefinite Pronouns.

Nun keine wollte aufgefressen werden, was man den guten Mäusen auch nicht verdenken kann. Sie sahen nur betroffen aus, und niemand sagte ein Wort. Die alte Maus wurde endlich ängstlich, und sagte: "Jemand muss es thun. Ich kann es freilich nicht, da ich zu alt bin, aber manche von euch sind noch jung und kräftig." Die andern sagten noch immer nichts, und die alte Maus fuhr verzweifelt fort: "Etwas müssen wir anfangen. Viele können es, wenn sie nur wollen. Wagt doch ein wenig für das Wohl eures Geschlechtes." Alle schlugen die Augen nieder; nach einer kurzen Weile sahen sich mehrere um, um zu wissen, ob gar niemand sich anbot. Eine nach der andern schlich dann fort, bis endlich nur die alte Maus und Weissköpfchen allein blieben. Die beiden sahen einander an, und wollten sprechen aber konnten nicht, es war zu traurig; in ein paar Minuten war da nichts von der hoffnungsvollen Versammlung zu sehen, als nur die Schelle und das rothe Band.

Father, Johnnie, Charlie and Elsie.

F.—Now, children, can you tell me the story of the sly cat and the stupid mice? Where did they live?

All.—Why, you didn't tell us the name of the house nor where it was!

F.—Well, can't you guess? Say somewhere.

All.—No. We never can guess anything. No one could guess.

C.—I don't believe mice can talk anyway!

E.—Yes, they can; I heard one crying one day!

J.—That's no proof, but they must have some sort of language, for they understand one another.

F.—Well, children, where was the house?

C.—O! I suppose here in this one. Most of your stories begin and end here.

F.—Why shouldn't they? Johnnie, can you tell me the story?

J.—In German or in English?

F.—Doesn't matter which. Begin!

J.—The poor little mice in a certain house were never safe from a wicked old cat which was always catching and eating them. So they held a meeting to talk over their trouble, and a brown mouse said that it would hang a bell on the cat's neck.

Ch.—No, that's not right, the brown mouse brought the bell, but it was a white one which made the proposal, only it said to hang the bell on the cat's tail.

E.—Papa, wasn't that a bad cat to eat the poor little mice? I don't like such cats.

F.—Charlie is right, Johnnie. Go on with the story, Charlie.

Ch.—I have almost forgotten. Oh, yes! the mice all thought that the little white one was very clever, and a brown one brought the bell, and a third had found a bit of ribbon to tie it with.

F.—Where did it get the ribbon, Elsie?

E.—It was dolly's. Somebody must have thrown it on the floor, and then the naughty mice stole it.

F.—Does anyone know that somebody?

J.—I guess it was Elsie. She often leaves things lying around like that.

F.—Well, finish the mouse story!

J.—When they had everything ready an old mouse asked if anyone would try to hang the bell on the cat's tail, but no one wished to undertake it, for the old cat would turn around, catch and eat them up. The little white mouse was not so cute after all, was it?

E.—I wish I had a nice little white mouse!

F.—You have your dollies and doll carriage, and lots of other things. I think you have enough, eh, girlie?

Now it's time to go to bed. Good night. I'll tell you something else to-morrow night.

15.

Possessives.

"Ich habe Ihren Vater und Ihre Tante in der Stadt gesehen, Elise. Sie hatten dieses Armband gefunden, und meinten es sei meines; ich sagte aber gleich, es sei das Ihrige." "Ja, es ist meines, ich danke Ihnen sehr und freue mich riesig, das Armband wieder zu haben. Meine liebe Grossmutter hat letzten Weihnachten meiner Cousine und mir jeder eins gegeben. Die Cousine hat ihres aber schon vor langer Zeit verloren. Ihr Vater ärgerte sich darüber, dass sie so nachlässig gewesen war, und meiner ist mir jetzt auch wohl böse, nur kann es nicht so schlimm werden, da das Armband wieder gefunden ist. Er sagt immer, wenn seine Mutter so freundlich

ist, uns so schöne Geschenke zu machen, muss er verlangen, dass wir ihre Geschenke zu schätzen wissen, und sie gut aufbewahren. Die Cousine meinte, sie habe das ihrige im Garten verloren, und sie und ihr Bruder haben es stundenlang gesucht, sie haben es aber doch nicht finden können.

When I was calling on a friend of mine yesterday, her daughter came into the room looking so pleased and happy that I asked her what had happened. She said: "Last Christmas Grandma gave me a beautiful brooch. I was of course delighted and took good care of it. But yesterday morning, when I went to church with mother, I wore it, and when we came home it was gone. I was not sure where I had lost it, on the street or in the church, and I had also been walking about in the garden before church began. When Papa heard about it he was very much annoyed, and said that I certainly did not know how to appreciate his mother's kindness, and that when he was a child he would have been severely punished by his parents for such carelessness, for it could not have fallen off if I had fastened it properly. My eldest brother, who is at home for his holidays, helped me to hunt for it everywhere, but all our efforts were in vain. You may imagine, then, how delighted I was when my friend Alice called this morning and brought it to me. She had found it on the street near the entrance of our church and recognized it at once as mine."

16.

Pronouns of the Second Person—Possessives.

"Kinder, kommt schnell ins Haus. Könnt ihr nicht sehen, dass es schon sehr stark regnet. Eure Mutter wird böse sein, wenn sie wieder kommt, und findet, ihr seid nass geworden; Hermann, du bist der älteste, schon zehn Jahre alt, du solltest

vernünftiger sein. Deine Kleider sind ganz nass, und die deinigen auch, Karl."

"Aber die meinen nicht, Tante, ich stand unter einem Baum."

"Nun, kommt in die Kinderstube! wem gehört dieses Buch, Karl, ist es deins?"

"Ja, es ist meins aber ich will es nicht. Du kannst es haben, Marie, wenn ich das deinige haben darf."

"Ach, danke schön, meins ist neu und deins ist alt. Ich habe mein eignes lieber."

Auntie—Why, Charlie! You have got your clothes all wet; where have you been?

Charlie—I was out in the rain. It was great fun.

Auntie—Oh, you naughty boy, how angry your mother will be when she comes home! Go to the nursery at once and change your clothes, then you must do your schoolwork.

Charlie—All right; may I put on Fred's coat? my old one is torn.

Auntie—If Fred is willing to lend it, I have no objections.

Fred—I suppose I'll have to lend it to him, for if I refuse, he will not help me with my arithmetic.

Charlie—I lent you my knife the other day when you broke yours, so you might lend me your old coat till mine gets dry.

Auntie—Come, boys, don't quarrel, but get to your work.

Fred—Auntie, will you please lend me a lead pencil? I can't find mine anywhere. Have you seen my reading-book? I am sure I brought it home.

Charlie—You may have mine, Fred, I can spell all the words in to-morrow's lesson.

Auntie—You are a very thoughtless boy, Fred. When will you learn to have a place for your things?

Charlie—He would lose his head, I fancy, if it were not fast on.

Auntie—I do really believe he would.

17.

The Auxiliaries Have and Be.

A.—Wissen Sie, wohin Herr Müller diesen Sommer gegangen ist?

B.—Ich habe nur gehört, dass er vorige Woche nach Deutschland abgereist ist, nichts weiter.

A.—So wissen Sie nichts von dem Unfall, der ihm neulich begegnet ist?

B.—Kein Wort, da ich ja sechs Wochen lang nicht zu Hause gewesen bin.

A.—Vor ungefähr vier Wochen, als es an einem Nachmittag stark geregnet hatte, ist er auf der Strasse über eine Apfelsinenschale so unglücklich gefallen, dass er sich den Arm gebrochen hat.

B.—Nun, er brauchte doch wohl nicht nach Deutschland zu gehen, um sich kuriren zu lassen?

A.—Theilweise ist dieses der Grund seiner Reise gewesen. Nachdem sein Arm geheilt war, meinte der Arzt, der ihn behandelt hatte, dass es gut wäre, wenn er auf einige Zeit nach Wiesbaden ginge, und dort Mineralbäder nähme, um zu verhindern, dass er Rheumatismus in dem Arme bekäme, was oft nach einem Bruch der Fall ist.

B.—Herr Müller hätte nichts besseres thun können, als nach Wiesbaden zu gehen, denn mir sind die Bäder ausgezeichnet bekommen, als ich vor fünf Jahren dort war.

Bellvue, July 29, 1894.

Dear Friend:

You will be surprised to hear that your cousin has gone to Germany. He could not write to you because he is unable to use his right arm well, so asked me to write to you for him.

About four weeks ago he met with a rather bad accident. When walking down town at his usual rapid pace he slipped on a piece of orange peel and fell so heavily that he broke his right arm. As we have a very good doctor in our town, your cousin's arm was all but healed in a comparatively short time, but there was danger now that he might get rheumatism in the injured member; so Dr. Brown advised him to go to Wiesbaden, and take the mineral baths for about a month. I do not think your cousin could have done better than take this advice, because I myself have tried the baths there, as you know, and they agreed with me splendidly.

Hoping that we shall have the pleasure of seeing our friend safe and sound, in the month of September,

I remain,

Yours truly,

J. S.

18.

Modal Auxiliaries.

Kingston, d. 12.6.1895.

Lieber Bruder!

Du kannst wohl begreifen, wie ich mich freute, vorgestern deinen Brief zu bekommen. Wie hast du dir nur einbilden können, dass du ein so leichtes Examen nicht bestehen könntest! Wenn so viele faule Studenten es haben thun können, warum auch nicht du? Ich habe vor Freude fast jauchzen müssen, so herzlich freute ich mich. Nun, werden wir aber gut überlegen müssen, ob du Student werden sollst. Es würde

mich freuen, zu hören, dass du dich entschlossen hast, die Universität zu besuchen; vielleicht aber würdest du lieber etwas anderes thun. Ich möchte dir nicht zu viele Rathschläge geben, denn du bist ja alt genug, um zu wissen, zu welchem Beruf du dich am besten eignen würdest, auch mag ich nicht die Rolle des Moralpredigers spielen. Eins aber darf ich dir wohl sagen, etwas muss und sollte jeder Mensch thun, denn ohne Beschäftigung hat noch niemand glücklich leben können. Mit deinem Zeugniss könntest du in ein Geschäft eintreten, falls du nicht studiren willst. Lass bald von dir hören. Mit herzlichem Gruss verbleibe ich,

dein treuer Bruder,

E.

Charles—Now, Hermann, do make some suggestions. I do not want to attend the University, so am considering what business or profession I should choose.

Hermann—I was hoping that you would have been able to decide on the University, but am glad in any case that you are making plans for the future. One must no longer spend the time in boyish dreams after twenty years of age, you know.

C.—Well, now that I have passed my examination I am to go to the country for the summer, but should first like to decide what I shall do in the autumn.

H.—You are quite right. Such matters should be decided in good time. What have you thought of yourself? You ought to know best yourself what you are most fitted for.

C.—I should, of course, but there is so much that one cannot think of attempting without having had a University training. I might go after all, only I can't pass examinations well.

H.—You must not imagine anything of the kind. You were able to pass this last examination, and that without having to work hard, as you say yourself. Why not, then, the University

examinations? You can do it, of course, especially if you can make up your mind to be a little bit more industrious.

C. – It's all very well to say, "Be industrious"—that means "Sit over your books the whole day and every day." Now you know that does not agree with me. If I am to keep my health I must have fresh air. After all, I believe it would be best for me to go into some business.

19.

Passive Voice.

A.—Haben Sie den Soldaten im Hospital gesehen, mit dem ich gestern sprach?

B.—Ja, der Mann war wohl schwer krank?

A.—Er war lieber verwundet.

B.—In welcher Schlacht war er verwundet worden?

A.—In der Schlacht bei Sedan im Jahre 1870.

B.—In dieser Schlacht wurde wohl sehr hartnäckig gekämpft?

A.—Ja, es war ein mörderischer Kampf, die Franzosen wurden mit grossem Verluste geschlagen, und Kaiser Napoleon wurde gefangen genommen.

B.—Wie lange war er im Gefängniss?

A.—Nur bis März, 1871. Er überlebte aber nur kurze Zeit den Verlust seines Reiches, denn ein tiefer Gram lässt sich schwer bekämpfen.

B.—Wurde der Krieg durch die Schlacht bei Sedan zu Ende gebracht?

A.—O, nein, erst nachdem Paris eingenommen war, liess sich an Frieden denken.

B.—Wann kam der Friede zustande?

A.—Ein paar Tage ehe Napoleon freigesetzt wurde.

B.—Was war die Folge des Krieges?

A.—Elsass and Lothringen fielen an Deutschland zurück, die verschiedenen Staaten Deutschland wurden unter einem Oberhaupte vereinigt, und Wilhelm I. wurde zum Kaiser erklärt.

The poor old soldier whom we saw in the park yesterday was sent to me this morning by Dr. Brown, who is very anxious that some occupation be found for him. But I really don't know what can be done for him, as the old man is very lame and weak. I had a very interesting conversation with him, however. He was wounded in the leg at the battle of ———, was taken prisoner and remained in prison several months. The prisoners were much neglected and their wounds were not well attended to, so he became very ill and has been lame ever since. He says they were not given enough to eat, nor were they allowed any exercise in the fresh air. It is no wonder, therefore, that the evil effects of his serious wound could not be prevented.

A.—Did you hear of the accident down town last night?

B.—No, what happened? Was any one hurt?

A.—Yes, a horse ran away, and the man, his wife and little boy were thrown out of the sleigh.

B.—How did it happen? I hope they were not badly hurt!

A.—Dr. Smith's dog ran out of the garden, and barked so furiously at the horse that it got frightened.

B.—I wish some one would shoot that ugly beast!

A.—Yes, so do I! The man was thrown out of the sleigh against a tree, his left arm broken, his right wrist sprained, and his face covered with scratches. One eye was also injured.

B.—Dear me! I hope the woman got off more easily!

A.—She did. She was seen to jump before the sleigh was upset. She fell in some deep snow. Her ankle was sprained and her back hurt a little.

B.—What about the boy?

A.—The brave little fellow kept hold of the reins for a good while after the sleigh upset, but at last was thrown against the sidewalk and his head badly cut. However, the doctor says he will soon be well.

20.

Reflexive and Impersonal Verbs.

Das Reisen ist doch eine schöne Sache, wenn man Zeit und Geld hat. Vorigen Sommer machte ich eine Reise nach Europa, auf die ich mich schon lange Zeit gefreut hatte. Ich hatte mir mit zwei Freunden zusammen eine Kajüte auf der "Augusta Victoria" genommen. Es war schönes Wetter als wir von New York abreisten, aber auf dem offenen Meere wurde es kalt, ein Wind erhob sich, es regnete, und das Schiff fing an, bedenklich zu schaukeln. Da ich nicht besonders "seefest" bin, sahen sich meine Freunde mit bedeutungsvollen Blicken an, denn sie erwarteten, mich bald in meiner Kajüte verschwinden zu sehen, aber, obgleich ich mich nicht sehr wohl fühlte, wollte ich ihnen das Vergnügen doch nicht machen. Ich nahm mich also zusammen, denn ich schämte mich, irgend welche Schwäche blicken zu lassen. Ich warf auch meine Cigarre fort, und legte mich in meinen Stuhl in vollständig horizontaler Stellung. Meine Freunde wollten sich über mich tot lachen, aber ich dachte, es lohnt sich nicht, darüber ärgerlich zu werden. Sehr bald änderte sich jedoch unsere Lage. Da ich mich vollständig ruhig verhielt, so fühlte ich mich bald wieder wohl. Zu meiner stillen Freude aber sah ich Karl, den einen meiner Freunde sich mit totblassem Gesichte nach der Kajüte begeben. "Wenn du einen Schluck

Wein haben willst," sagte ich zu ihm, "so öffne meine kleine Reisetasche, du wirst die Flasche darin finden." "Darum handelt es sich nicht," sagte er mit schwacher Stimme, "der Geruch des Maschinenöls hat mir Kopfschmerzen gemacht," und mit diesen Worten verschwand er.

Dear Brown:

I hear you are about to start on a long sea voyage, so I write to give you a few practical hints about life on board ship, which I fancy will be of service to you.

It very often happens that you leave Montreal in fair weather and hardly notice the motion of the ship while on the St. Lawrence. When, however, you come out on the open sea, a wind springs up, it turns cold, begins to rain, and all at once you notice that the vessel is rocking most uncomfortably. Unless you are a good sailor, you will not feel very well, but if such should be the case, don't let yourself be persuaded to take brandy, for that will only make matters worse. The best thing for you to do, is to lie down flat on your back on a seat or in your chair, and not look at the water but at the sky. Keep perfectly quiet and do not smoke, not even a pipe, but eat good ripe fruit and don't allow yourself to get annoyed at anything. In case you should get worse, and I hope you will not, don't feel ashamed to apply to the doctor, if this should be necessary. No one has ever had to complain of want of attention on board the "Vancouver." On the whole you may hope to have a good, safe and even pleasant journey, which I wish you with all my heart.

I shall also send you, in a couple of days, the addresses of two or three of my friends, so that when you reach the end of your journey you will not be quite friendless in a strange city. Call upon them at once and I know they will be delighted to do you any favour they can; they are fine fellows. With the best wishes,

I remain, yours,

E. S.

21.

Compound Verbs

Nach einer im ganzen recht angenehmen Überfahrt, kamen wir Ende Juli in Hamburg an. Ich hatte mir vorgenommen, mich nur einen Tag in dieser Stadt aufzuhalten, aber Fritz und Karl überredeten mich, eine Woche hier zu bleiben. Die Stadt ist sehr schön an dem Flüsschen Alster gelegen, welches im Innern der Stadt zu dem berühmten Alster-Bassin erweitert worden ist. Um dieses Bassin, welches einem grossen Teiche ähnlich sieht, befinden sich die schönsten Hotels, Restaurants und Läden. Am Ufer entlang sieht man elegant gekleidete Damen und Herren spazieren gehen und auf dem Wasser wimmelt es von Fahrzeugen aller Art. Da es ein besonders schöner Tag war, wollte Fritz sich von einem Fährmann übersetzen lassen, aber wir stellten ihm vor, dass keine Zeit dazu wäre, da wir uns verabredet hatten, mit einigen uns bekannten Amerikanern in einem gewissen Restaurant zu Mittag zu essen. Nachdem dieses wichtige Geschäft beendigt war, setzten wir unsere Entdeckungsreise in Hamburg fort; wir beobachteten das Menschengedränge vor der Börse, verweilten längere Zeit in den Museen und Bildergallerieen und besuchten auch das Stadttheater, welches vorzüglich ist. Von einem hiesigen Bürger wurde uns ein hübsches Segelboot zum Verkauf angeboten, wir liessen uns aber nicht darauf ein, unser Geld für so etwas auszugeben, da wir noch viele andere Städte Deutschlands zu besuchen gedachten.

My Dear Parents:

Our voyage was as pleasant as can be imagined under the circumstances. We had sunshine and fair weather nearly all the time, except near Newfoundland, when a fog arose and lasted a day and a half. The captain introduced us to quite a number

of the passengers, whom we found very pleasant and sociable. We were, indeed, almost sorry when we arrived in Hambury on the 15th of July. You remember we had not planned to stop there at all, but some American friends persuaded us to stay a few days. The first day we went to the famous Alster basin, a kind of pond in the centre of the city. As it was a fine day we decided to have a sail and hired a boat for that purpose, but a wind sprang up suddenly, as is often the case there, and we were glad to let the boatman take us over as quickly as possible. Afterwards we went exploring in the city itself, and, meeting with several Canadians, we went together to visit the Exchange, in which there is always a great crowd of people. In the afternoon we went to the picture gallery and in the evening to the theatre. The two or three days we spent in that city were very pleasant, but of course we spent money as well. We were very careful, however, not to be too prodigal, for if we follow our present plans we shall find plenty of opportunities to get rid of our ready money, and I daresay we shall need more before we get back home.

But I must stop. We are off to Berlin by the next train, which leaves in twenty minutes. I have to pack my valise yet and it's ten minutes' walk to the station. Good bye.

Your loving son,

E.

22.

PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, INTERJECTIONS.

Nachdem wir uns die Stadt Hamburg gründlich angesehen hatten, machten wir unsere Vorbereitungen nach Berlin zu gehen. Ungeachtet des schlechten Wetters waren wir eines Morgens um 6 Uhr auf dem Bahnhof. Für mich war es, offen gestanden, etwas zu früh, aber um meiner Freunde willen

hatte ich mich gefügt. Schon von 4 Uhr ab waren Fritz und Karl auf den Beinen, und machten im Zimmer einen solchen Spektakel, dass ich trotz meiner Müdigkeit nicht wieder einschlafen konnte. Dann frühstückten wir auf unserem Zimmer, da zu so früher Stunde niemand im Hause wach war, allein statt des Kaffees, den wir gewöhnlich des Morgens trinken, hatten wir nur kalte Milch. Nachdem wir gegessen hatten, verliessen wir mit allem Gepäck das Haus, um uns nach dem Bahnhof zu begeben. Beinahe hatten wir unseren Zug verpasst, da derselbe nicht vor dem Bahnhofsgebäude, wie wir erwartet hatten, sondern hinter demselben abging. Nach mehrstündiger Fahrt kamen wir auf den grossen Bahnhof Friedrichstrasse an. Wir gingen in das riesige Gebäude hinein, betrachteten die eleganten Warteräume, Restaurants, u.s.w., und sahen uns auch nach unserem Gepäck um. Dann nahmen wir uns eine Droschke und fuhren zu einem Hotel, das uns empfohlen war.

At the Station.

A.—Good morning! What are doing here at this early hour?

B.—You don't think I am here merely for pleasure, do you? I have to take this five o'clock train for Montreal.

A.—That's fine! we can go together, for I am bound for the same place.

B.—Allow me to introduce my friends. Mr. Davies—Mr. Arthur, Mr. Rogers—Mr. Arthur.

A.—I'm very glad to make your acquaintance, gentlemen.

D. and R.—Thank you, the pleasure is mutual.

B.—Well, do you enjoy getting up at four in the morning? I don't, but I had to give in to my friends, who were obliged to take this train. They have been stirring around since half-

past three and woke me up with their racket, and if I did try to get to sleep again Davies would shout out, "Come, old fellow, get up or you'll go without your breakfast." Davies wouldn't miss his for any money. And such a breakfast! No coffee! no toast! cold milk, bread and butter and a little ham.

D.—Don't pay any attention to what he says. Rogers and I noticed that he ate his full share, if not more.

R.—I can assure you, he won't die of hunger even if he doesn't get any dinner.

A.—I know B. of old. He can take care of himself.

B.—Say, Davies, have you looked after the baggage? Here comes the train. It stops but a second or two. Where did you put my valise?

R.—Does the train start in front of or behind the station?

A.—Right here. All aboard.

23.

PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS—*(Cont.)*.

Ich hatte einen Empfehlungsbrief an eine Familie namens Schulze, die wir bald nach unserer Ankunft aufsuchten.

Das Haus des Herrn Schulze befindet sich in der Potsdamer Strasse in der Nähe des Thiergartens. Auf dem Wege nach Hause begegnete uns ein kleiner Unfall. Wir fuhren in einer Droschke in ziemlich schnellem Tempo, als plötzlich ein Herr auf einem Zweirad, der eine ganze Weile hinter uns hergefahren war, wie der Wind an uns vorbeisauste, so dass unser Pferd scheute, einen Satz in den Graben machte, und den Wagen umwarf. Karl und ich flogen auf die Seite, aber Fritz blieb unter dem umgestürzten Wagen liegen. Da lagen wir nun mit schmerzenden Gliedern am Wege! Der erste, der sich

ermannte, war Karl. "Donnerwetter, da hätte man ja beinahe den Hals gebrochen," rief er aus, und sich umwendend fuhr er fort: "Aber wo ist denn Fritz?" Ein Stöhnen war die Antwort. "Potztausend, mein Sohn, wie bist du denn da hingerathen?" schrie Karl von neuem, "kannst du nicht unter dem Wagen hervorkommen?" "Ich wollte, du lägest hier an meiner Stelle," brummte Fritz, "dann könntest du es ja selbst versuchen." Mittlerweile war die Zeit ziemlich vorgerückt, die Sonne stand hoch am Himmel, und es kostete uns keine kleine Anstrengung, den Wagen mit vereinten Kräften aufrecht zu stellen, um den unglücklichen Fritz zu befreien.

Last winter when I was on the road to visit a friend of mine, who lives on a farm, I met with a kind of accident which is not uncommon in Canada. I was in the company of two friends of mine, and we had hired a handsome sleigh with a pair of fine horses. We were driving at the rate of ten miles an hour. At first all went well; we were flying through the woods and fields, had left a number of villages behind us, and were approaching the railroad track, when unfortunately the train was just coming in. Our horses, which were not used to locomotives, shied, jumped into the ditch and upset the sleigh. Will and I were thrown to one side, but Charles fell under the sleigh, so that he could not free himself without help. When we found ourselves lying in the cold snow, we did not consider our situation very pleasant. "The deuce," said Will, "this might have been a pretty serious affair." Then turning around, he noticed Charlie trying hard to get out from under the sleigh, and exclaimed, "Halloa, old fellow, what are you doing there?" "Waiting for you to come and help me out!" answered Charlie. So we jumped to our feet, and with united efforts lifted it and released him from his dangerous position.

24.

Double Accusative; Accusative Expressions.

Der deutsche Kaiser Heinrich VI. war im Jahre 1197 ohne Erben gestorben, und hatte auch niemand zu einem Nachfolger bestimmt, daher wurde von der Hohenstaufischen Partei Philipp von Schwaben zum Kaiser gewählt, während die Guelfen Otto von Braunschweig, einen Neffen des Königs Johann von England zum Gegenkandidaten aufstellten. Obgleich die Gegner zu verschiedenen politischen Parteien gehörten, achteten sie sich doch als Menschen. Nach dem Kampfe um die Krone, in welchem Otto Sieger war, fand die Versöhnung zwischen beiden statt. Als Philipp gefangen vor Otto geführt wurde, rief letzterer aus: "Von jetzt ab betrachte ich dich als meinen Freund, nicht als meinen Gefangenen!" Was Philipp betrifft, so hielt er Otto für einen Ehrenmann und echten Ritter. Die beiden Freunde lebten in engster Gemeinschaft, schliefen in einem Bett und tranken aus einem Becher. Otto nannte Philipp nicht nur seinen Freund, sondern ernannte ihn sogar zu seinem Mitregenten. So stellt die Geschichte beide Gegner als edle Menschen dar.

Son—I was reading to-day about Otto of Brunswick and Philip of Swabia, father. How did it happen that Otto called Philip his intimate friend? Were they not rivals for the imperial crown?

Father—Yes, my son; but they were such noble men, and respected one another so much as knights, that the struggle for the crown did not hinder their friendship.

S.—How did it come about that there were two candidates at all, then?

F.—Henry IV. died without deciding on anyone as his successor, so the two parties, Guelphs and Hohenstaufens, set up these two princes as candidates. After Otto had gained the

victory in the struggle, they were reconciled and looked upon one another as the dearest friends.

S.—But I thought Philip was taken prisoner by Otto.

F.—That is also true, but Otto did not consider him a prisoner. On the contrary, he appointed him to a most important office in his government.

25.

Verbs and Adjectives with Genitive and Dative.

Ehe Wilhelm Tell der Befreier der Schweiz wurde, machten sich die Vögte vieler Grausamkeiten schuldig. Besonders Gessler und Landenberg waren zu allen schlechten Thaten fähig. Einst pflügte der Bauer Melchthal mit einem Gespann schöner Ochsen. Gessler sah dieselben und schickte zwei seiner Diener, die den Bauer dieser Thiere berauben sollten. Melchthal weigerte sich anfangs, dem Befehl Gesslers Folge zu leisten und die Ochsen herauszugeben, aber die Diener behaupteten, dass alles Eigenthum der Bauern dem Kaiser gehöre, und drohten dem Manne mit dem Tode, falls er ihrem Herrn trotzen wollte. Melchthal, welcher der Tyrannenherrschaft schon lange überdrüssig war, schlug den einen der Diener, welcher sich der Ochsen bemächtigen wollte. Beide eilten in grossem Zorne zu ihrem Herrn. Am nächsten Tage schickte der Landvogt andere Diener zu Melchthal, um ihn vor sich fordern zu lassen; da jedoch derselbe abwesend war, ergriffen die Diener seinen alten Vater, und schleppten ihn vor den Landvogt, der ihm beide Augen ausstechen liess.

Gessler schämte sich solcher Thaten durchaus nicht, sondern rühmte sich vielmehr derselben; daher erscheint es uns als gerechte Vergeltung, dass er eines gewaltsamen Todes durch Tells Hand starb.

Some servants of a rich nobleman wished to rob him of his money, but his faithful gardener was not capable of such a deed and positively refused to help them, although they threatened and flattered him by turns. He answered them thus when they came to him: "I could not be guilty of such a theft, and you will be ashamed of it when you remember all his kindness to us all. Our master has always trusted us and it would be contemptible to injure him in this way. You ought to serve him honestly, instead of wishing to take possession of what belongs to him. For my part, I defy your threats and mistrust your promises. Do not venture to rob him, for you know that he is accustomed to shooting and will protect his property. If you persist in your undertaking you will surely die a violent death."

Master—Can you tell me the story of the revolt of Switzerland from Austria?

Scholar—Unfortunately, not very much.

M.—Why, haven't you read Schiller's William Tell?

S.—Yes, but I don't remember much of the real history. Plays do not in general follow history so very closely.

M.—That's true, of course. But a play will sometimes help you to remember history. Can't you think of any names? Who are the principal characters in the play?

S.—Tell on the one side, Gessler on the other.

M.—What was the cause of the revolt of the Swiss?

S.—The many cruel acts of which Gessler and his servants were guilty.

M.—Can you mention any?

S.—A good example is when Gessler caused the eyes of Melchthal's father to be put out.

M.—Any other? Did he injure Tell in any way?

S.—He is said to have made Tell shoot an apple from his boy's head.

M.—Did the Swiss succeed in the revolt?

S.—I think they did, but am not certain.

M.—Well, I think you had better read up on these history points before the next lesson.

26.

Indirect Narration: Subjunctive Mood.

A.—Hast du von deinem Freunde in Heidelberg wieder einmal gehört?

B.—Ja, er schrieb mir vor einigen Tagen, dass er jetzt im letzten Semester wäre, und daher die Vorlesungen nicht so fleissig besucht, sondern sich mehr auf das Doktor-examen vorbereitet hätte. Wie es in der Studentensprache lautet, paukt er jetzt ganz tüchtig ein.

A.—Schrieb er dir nicht schon im vorigen Jahre, dass er das Examen zu machen gedächte?

B.—Ja, und ich glaube auch, dass er die Absicht gehabt hat, allein er kam doch bald zu der Einsicht, dass er der deutschen Sprache noch nicht mächtig genug wäre, daher hat er sein Examen ein Jahr hinausgeschoben.

A.—Er versteht doch die Umgangssprache ziemlich gut, nicht wahr?

B.—O ja, er schrieb mir bereits im ersten Jahre, dass er die Leute gut verstände, und auch keine Mühe hätte, sich über alltägliche Dinge auszudrücken.

A.—Auf welche Weise wurde er in Heidelberg bekannt?

B.—Er hatte einen Empfehlungsbrief an den amerikanischen Konsul, welchen er bereits am ersten Tage aufsuchte. Er bat diesen Herrn, ihm eine gute Pension vorzuschlagen, und

fragte ihn, ob er ihm die Wohnung eines der Professoren angeben könne. Der Konsul, welcher ein höflicher Mann war, sagte, dass es ihm ein Vergnügen sein würde, seinem jungen Landsmann mit Rath und That beizustehen, und führte meinen Freund selbst bei mehreren Familien ein.

I received a letter a few days ago from my friend in Leipzig, in which he says he intends to spend next term at the University in Breslau, because there are too many Americans and English in Leipzig. He declares he has been forced to put off his examination, because it is impossible to become master of the German in such a crowd of English-speaking students. I suppose, of course, he understands the language when spoken, and can express himself very well in ordinary conversation, for he wrote me that he had been introduced into a good many refined families in Leipzig. I think he had several letters of introduction, and he said the American consul had assisted him and been so kind to him, that he had had no difficulty in getting into German society. What he wanted, however, was a closer acquaintance with German students, and that seemed quite impossible in Leipzig. So he wrote that he was going to Breslau, for he had heard that there were scarcely any English or Americans there. That was my experience, too, and I found I had to talk German whether or not. The students at Breslau are very sociable, and famous singers, so that if he joins any of the numerous student societies, he is sure to have plenty of opportunities to learn the customs and life of German students. He says he finds that one must thoroughly know the students to know the professors and their methods, and so much depends on the professor whether a candidate gets through or is plucked. He is undoubtedly right, and I think he is doing a very sensible thing to make the change. Then there is another advantage. The classes there are smaller and each student gets better acquainted with his professors.

27.

CONDITIONAL, FINAL, CONCESSIVE, OPTATIVE CLAUSES.

A.—Was haben Sie denn vor, Sie sehen ja so feierlich aus?

B.—Ich habe die Absicht ein Haus zu kaufen, wenn ich hier eins finden kann, das mir gefällt.

A.—Warum sollten Sie keins finden, das Ihnen passt? Es giebt sehr hübsche Häuser in unserer Stadt.

B.—Das ist richtig, aber, obgleich ich einige Häuser bemerkt habe, die sich von aussen recht gut ausnehmen, so weiss ich doch nicht, ob mir die Einrichtung derselben gefallen würde.

A.—Sind Sie so schwer zu befriedigen?

B.—Das gerade nicht; aber ich suche ein Haus, welches bequeme Treppen hat, damit meine Frau durch das Treppensteigen nicht zu sehr angestrengt wird. In unserem alten Hause war die Treppe, welche nach der Küche führte, so schlecht und ausgetreten, dass meine Kinder sehr oft die Stufen herunterfielen, und meine Frau, die viel auf den Füssen ist, durch das häufige Hinauf- und Hinuntergehen oft zu Tode ermüdet wurde.

A.—Wenn das der Punkt ist, auf den Sie am meisten Gewicht legen, so kann ich Ihnen das Haus des Herrn M. vorschlagen; es hat eine hübsche Lage, sieht gut aus und hat sehr bequeme Treppen.

B.—Dürfte ich Sie bitten, mich Herrn M. vorzustellen, damit ich mit ihm über den Verkauf verhandeln kann?

A.—Mit dem grössten Vergnügen. Mögen Sie den besten Erfolg haben.

C———, July 12, 1895.

Dear Cousin Mary :

As I told you on your last visit, mother and I have come to the conclusion that it would be better for us to move to Toronto, although we like this pretty little town so much and have lived in it so long. Last winter mother was troubled so very much with rheumatism that she was laid up for several weeks, and our doctor said we should move away from the lake as soon as possible. If we could find a suitable house in the northern part of Toronto we would more in September. Do you know of any small house which would be likely to suit us? If I were not afraid of giving you too much trouble, I would ask you to look around a little for us, but not further south than Bloor street. We don't require a large or stylish house, but we want one with good heating so that mother need not suffer from the cold. We don't want to have to make on a fire in the grate every day, as was the case in this house last winter. You see what we want is a snug, warm house.

Should you happen to know of such a house, would you kindly let us know the proprietor's address so that we may write to him at once.

Yours as ever,

Anna.

28.

Imperative and Infinitives.

Lehrer—Was habe ich euch für heute zu arbeiten aufgegeben, Fritz?

Fritz—Wir haben zwei Seiten zu lesen und eine Seite zu schreiben.

L.—Alle Schreibhefte aufgeschlagen! Was willst du, Wilhelm?

Wilh.—Herr Schmidt, mein Vater lässt Sie bitten, mich zu entschuldigen; ich habe mich gestern in den Finger geschnitten, und konnte meine Seite nicht schreiben.

L.—Schon gut, aber sei in Zukunft geschickter! Hans Braun, schreibe nicht so dick, und halte dein Buch auch etwas sauberer! Legt nun alle die Hefte weg, und schlagt die Lesebücher auf! Wo ist dein Buch, Paul?

Paul—Bitte verzeihen Sie, Herr Schmidt, ich habe es vergessen.

L.—Das darf nicht wieder vorkommen! Otto, lass Paul in dein Buch einsehen! Karl, den letzten Satz noch einmal lesen! Du musst die Endsilben besser aussprechen, und nicht so leise und schnell lesen! Jetzt, Paul, weiter.

Karl—Herr Schmidt, Sie sagten gestern, dass wir heute alle zusammen lesen sollten.

L.—Gut, das wollen wir thun. Alle aufstehen! Seid vorsichtig! Gut zusammengelesen! (*Sie lesen alle zusammen.*) Das wird für diesmal genügen! Setzt euch jetzt hin!

Teacher—Well, Charlie, what is your lesson for to-day?

Ch.—We had the poem on page 15 to read, to learn by heart and repeat.

Teacher—How many pages had you to write?

Ch.—The first two pages in the new copybook.

Teacher—Open all copybooks! Fred, where is your book?

Fred—Will you please excuse me, Mr. Smith? I lost mine on the way to school this morning.

Teacher—I'll excuse you this time, but don't be so careless in future. George Brown, sit up straight and stop sharpening your pencil. Harry, don't write so badly next time or you shall stay in after school. Now, put away all copybooks and open your readers! You may begin to read, Willie; read as distinctly as you can and not too low. That will do. Percy, please

continue! Read that last sentence over again, you read too fast. That is better. You should pronounce the final syllables more distinctly. Now we'll have some reading in concert. The class please stand! Be careful to pronounce the same word at the same time! That's fine! Take your seats! Now all scholars may go and play.

29.

NOTE.—This and the following German exercise have been translated into English so that the student may be able to compare the differences between English and German usage.

HOW TO TRANSLATE THE ENGLISH PARTICIPLES INTO GERMAN.

Da ich gehört hatte, dass mein Freund in einer benachbarten Stadt zum Besuch war, und ein paar Wochen bleiben wollte, so schrieb ich an ihn und lud ihn ein, mich auch zu besuchen. Wie erstaunt war ich dann eine Stunde später, nachdem ich den Brief auf die Post geschickt hatte, ihn vor mir stehen zu sehen! Er war mit der Absicht gekommen, mich zu überraschen, und es war ihm gelungen. Unsere Freude, als wir uns sahen, war gross, wie Sie es sich denken können, denn wir waren viele Jahre nicht zusammengekommen. Nachdem wir eine Weile geplaudert hatten, machten wir einen Spaziergang nach dem Boothause hinunter, in der Hoffnung ein Boot zu miethen, um segeln zu gehen. Da jedoch sehr wenig Wind war, so gingen wir zurück, als ein kleines Mädchen uns erblickte, weinend auf uns zugelaufen kam und uns bat, ihren Hut zu holen, welcher in das Wasser gefallen war. Überzeugt dass keine grosse Gefahr vorhanden war, selbst für jemand der nicht gut schwimmen kann, da das Wasser nicht sehr tief war, war ich im Begriff hinein zu springen. Ein Knabe, der am Ufer stand, war jedoch schneller, ergriff den Hut und gab ihn dem kleinen Mädchen, die ihm mit strahlenden Augen dankte, und zu ihrer Mutter lief.

Hearing that my friend was visiting in a neighbouring town and was going to stay for a couple of weeks, I wrote inviting him to visit me too. How astonished I was, then, an hour after sending the letter to the post office, to see him standing before me. He had come intending to surprise me and he succeeded. Our rejoicing at seeing each other was great, as you may guess, for we had not met for many years. Having talked for some time, we took a walk down to the boathouse, hoping to hire a boat and go for a sail. There being very little wind, however, we were retracing our steps when a little girl, catching sight of us, came running up, crying and begging us to get her hat, which had fallen into the water. Convinced that there was no great danger, even for one who could not swim well, as the water was not very deep, I was going to spring in. A boy, standing on the shore, was, however, quicker and got the hat and gave it to the little girl, who, with beaming eyes, thanked him and ran away to her mother.

One morning in winter, it was the month of January, I was sitting in my study, busied with my work, when I heard a knock at the door. On opening it there stood before me a little boy clothed in thin rags, looking half frozen and famished. No kindhearted man can bear to see a child suffering from hunger and cold, so I brought him into the warm kitchen at once and, setting him before the fire to warm himself, I ordered the servant to get him food. It was sad to see the large brown eyes looking so eagerly at the meat and other food she brought; and still more, to see him literally swallowing whole with a famished air all that was set before him. After having eaten his fill he began to talk. Born in Italy, his dark complexion and large brown eyes had already betrayed that, he had come to America with his parents, hoping like them to grow rich in that wonderful country. Not long after arriving in New York, however, his father and

mother took sick and died, leaving him alone and without money in a strange city. He could play the violin and sing a few Italian songs, but many others were doing the same thing, so he could not earn much money. Then he started out begging. How he longed to get back to sunny Italy! His whole story was told with such an air of innocence that I, fully convinced of its truth, gave him a dollar to help him on his way, hunting up a warm coat for him as well. I had had a good long conversation in Italian and felt I owed him something for that. Having by this time got thoroughly warm, he went away, but not without thanking me repeatedly for my help.

30.

Differences in Idioms.

Man sollte über die vielen Abenteuer nicht erstaunt sein, welche eifrige Jäger bestehen. Sie freuen sich so auf die Jagdzeit, dass sie, erregt durch den Anblick von schönem Wild mag es ein Reh oder ein Bär oder irgend etwas anders sein, über alle Mühseligkeiten lachen, und sich vor Gefahren nicht warnen lassen wollen, sondern kopfüber hineinstürzen, bis es für sie so gut wie unmöglich ist, zurück zu gehen. Man sieht sie oft an den gefährlichsten Stellen, wo ihre Rettung vom Tode fast unmöglich erscheint. Aber sie sind reich an Hilfsmitteln, und zeigen niemals Mangel an Geistesgegenwart, sondern warten geduldig auf Hilfe, wenn nothwendig, und hoffen immer das Beste. Man kann immer darauf rechnen, dass sie niemals den Feigling spielen, sondern dass sie hartnäckig auf irgend etwas beharren, was sie einmal unternommen haben. Sie sind berühmt wegen ihrer Fähigkeit zu schwerer Arbeit, wegen ihrer Vorliebe für Sport, ihrer Freundschaft unter einander, und ihres Mitleids mit denjenigen, welche gegen ihre Vergnügungen gleichgültig sind.

People ought not to be surprised at the many adventures that eager huntsmen go through. They look forward so eagerly to the shooting season that, excited at the sight of some fine game, be it deer, bears or anything you like, they laugh at all hardships, will not be warned of dangers, but rush in headlong until it is all but impossible for them to retrace their steps. They are often seen in the most dangerous places, where it would seem almost impossible for them to be saved from destruction. But they are rich in resource, never show any lack of presence of mind, but patiently wait for relief where necessary, and always hope for the best. They can always be counted on never to play the coward, but to determinedly persist in whatever they once undertake. They are noted for their capacity for hard work, their love for sport, kindness to each other, and their pity for those indifferent to their pleasures.

A.—What are you laughing at, my friend?

B.—Laughing at you, of course, what else!

A.—I'm sure, I hope it amuses you. But what is it all about, pray?

B.—Well, do you remember joking over an old man in the car on the way here?

A.—Well, what of it? There is nothing to wonder at in that, surely! He was a queer fish, wasn't he?

B.—Oh, I am not finding fault with you at all. But do you know who he is?

A.—No, nor do I care. I don't want to trouble myself about it. But whom do you take him for? Somebody in high position, doubtless, travelling incognito.

B.—I know *that he is somebody in high position as you guessed.*

A.—One can always rely on you to discover something wonderful or tell some fine story of what never happened.

B.—However that may be, I can see that you are dying of curiosity to know who he is.

A.—Well, I don't know that I did anything to be ashamed of. But you might tell what you heard about him.

B.—I really hope you won't be worried about it when I do tell you. But I warn you that you will be surprised when you learn the truth.

A.—Well, I am glad that you have got something really good this time. Too often your discoveries are very flat and you know it. Don't make a long story of it, that's all.

A.—But I would not like to be in your place. I think you'll be more attentive to old men after this, for I am sure he saw you were laughing at him.

A.—Come, come, old fellow, I am getting tired of all this mystery!

B.—Well, that old gentleman is a member of the government and the very one who will have most influence in making the appointment you are so longing for.

A.—Good heavens! That is bad! What will become of me! I'm afraid I have spoiled my chances altogether.

B.—By no means! He doesn't know you by name, and when you visit him to apply personally for the position, be careful not to show any embarrassment. He will hardly remember the circumstance and all will be well.

PART II.

GERMAN ANECDOTES

AND

ENGLISH EXERCISES BASED THEREON.

GERMAN ANECDOTES

AND ENGLISH EXERCISES BASED THEREON.

Poems to be Committed to Memory.

31.

Die Kaiſer ſind ſelten.

Kaiſer Joſeph II. ließ ſich auf ſeiner Reiſe durch Holland eines Tages in einem kleinen Städtchen eine Portion Eier ſerviren. Als der Gaſtwirth ſpäter einen ganz unverſchämten Preis dafür forderte, meinte der Kaiſer: „Sind denn hier zu Lande die Eier ſo ſelten?" Der Wirth verbeugte ſich tief und antwortete: „Die Eier nicht, Majeſtät, wohl aber die Kaiſer."

Emperors are Scarce.

Many people think that those who can pay well should be obliged to do so, no matter what may be the real worth of what they have to sell. So when they have dealings with the rich, or still more with those of high rank, they ask a most exorbitant price for everything. An example of this is found in an experience of Emperor Joseph II. Once, as he was on a journey, he had to pass the night at the inn of a small town. The next morning the host made out such a bill, especially for the eggs the emperor had ordered for supper, that he, in great astonishment, asked if eggs were so scarce in that part of the country. The man was honest enough to answer that eggs were certainly not scarce, but emperors very much so.

32.

Lenné.

Der berühmteste Gartenkünstler seiner Zeit, P. J. Lenné, stand eines Sonntags mit dem Sammelteller am Ausgang der Friedenskirche. Er war unmittelbar vorher krank gewesen und dachte mehr an seine Krankheit, als an das Geldsammeln.

Als die Königin Elisabeth, die Gemahlin Friedrich Wilhelm IV., die Kirche verließ, fragte sie den alten Gartenkünstler im Vorbeigehen:

„Nun, Lenné, nehmen Sie viel ein?"

„Nur noch Mineralwasser, Majestät!" antwortete Lenné.

Lenné.

The effect is often very comical when a man answers a question according to what is in his own thoughts, instead of considering what was probably the intention of the person asking the question. One Sunday when Lenné, the horticulturist, was standing at the church door with the collection-plate, he was asked by the queen whether he was "taking much." Now the expression she used means in the German language, "Are you taking much medicine?" as well as "are you collecting much money?" Lenné, who had just recovered from a severe illness, was naturally thinking more of that than of anything else. So when asked whether he was "taking much" he answered at once, "Only mineral water now, your majesty."

33.

Galanterie.

Ein Bürgermeister hatte einer Herzogin einen Paß auszufertigen. Die Herzogin war reich, der Bürgermeister stand in ihren Diensten. Dazu war die Dame ein wenig kokett, und der Bürgermeister

beſtrebte ſich nach Kräften, ihr zu ſchmeicheln. Zum Unglück war die Herzogin einäugig, und er wußte nicht recht, wie er im Paſſe ihre Augen beſchreiben ſollte. Nach kurzem Bedenken ſchrieb er folgendermaßen: „Augen—dunkel, ſchön, ſanft, ausdrucksvoll—eins derſelben abweſend."

Gallantry.

The French are famous for their politeness, as everybody knows. We find a good example of this in the story of the mayor, who had to make out a pass for a countess, in whose service he was. Now the countess had unfortunately lost an eye in an accident some time before. How was the poor mayor to describe her eyes so as to flatter instead of offending the lady, for she was coquettish as well as rich and influential. A bright thought struck him all at once, and the following was written: "Eyes, light, large, beautiful, very expressive, one absent." As might be expected, even the countess had to laugh at the clever idea of the polite mayor.

34.

Der Prieſter und der Kaufmann.

Der bekannte Kanzelredner Roh ſtieg eines Tages in ein Koupee, in welchem unter anderen Reiſenden auch ein junger Kaufmann ſich befand. Der junge Mann fing ſofort an, über den Jeſuitenpater ſich luſtig zu machen. „Wiſſen Sie ſchon, Hochwürden," ſagte er, „daß in Paris jedes Mal, wenn ein Jeſuit eintrifft, ein Eſel gehängt wird?" Lächelnd erwiderte Pater Roh: „Nun, mein Freund, dann hüten Sie ſich doch ja, mit mir nach Paris zu reiſen." Sämmtliche Mitreiſende brachen in ein ſchallendes Gelächter aus.

The Priest and the Merchant.

A good story is told of Roh, the celebrated Jesuit preacher, who happened to be travelling towards Paris in the same

railway-compartment with a young merchant. The latter tried to make fun of the priest by reminding him of the Jesuit persecutions in Paris, asking him if he knew that every time a Jesuit appeared in the city an ass was hanged. The good father smiled good-humoredly, and caused all of his fellow-travellers to laugh heartily at his opponent by warning him that, in that case, it was a very dangerous thing for him to travel to Paris along with a Jesuit. As one may easily imagine, the young man kept quiet after that, taking very good care not to give the priest a second opportunity of making him ridiculous.

35.

Gut geantwortet.

Der Gesandte Heinrichs IV. von Frankreich am spanischen Königshofe, Herr Bassompierre, erstattete seinem königlichen Herrn Bericht über seinen Einzug in Madrid. Indem er alle Einzelheiten erzählte, sagte er: "Ich ritt das kleinste Maulthier von der Welt." Der König brach in ein schallendes Gelächter aus und rief: „O das muß ja ein höchst ergötzlicher Anblick gewesen sein—wahrhaftig, ein Esel auf einem Maulthiere!" Ohne eine Miene zu verziehen, antwortete der Gesandte in ruhigem Tone: „Gewiß, Sire, ich war ja der Vertreter Eurer Königlichen Majestät."

A Good Answer.

M. Bassompierre, Henry IV.'s representative at the Spanish court, was telling his master, after his return to France, all the particulars of his journey to Madrid. Among other things, he said he rode into the city on the smallest of mules. The king, laughing loudly at his own wit, remarked that it must have been a most amusing spectacle to see an ass riding on a mule. Whereupon Bassompierre made him a deep bow, and

answered that that was quite a matter of course, as he was representing his Royal Highness. The perfect dignity and respectful tone of this answer was a strong contrast to the king's stupid, rude remark, and at the same time it punished the royal joker as he deserved.

36.

Das Honorar.

Doktor S.— erhielt von einem Kranken vier Mark in einzelnen Stücken; er hatte fünf erwartet. Beim Ueberreichen läßt er wie aus Versehen oder Ungeschicklichkeit die Münzen fallen, so daß sie auf den Teppich rollen. Der Patient sammelt sie auf und überreicht sie. „Es waren fünf!" sagt der Arzt: „Nein," erwidert der Kranke. „Gewiß, es müssen fünf sein," betheuert der Doktor, „ich habe nur vier in der Hand, ein Markstück muß weggerollt sein, sehen Sie noch einmal nach."

Patient merkt endlich, was der Doktor will und meint, und legt das fünfte zu.

The Fee.

Customs differ in different lands, and it is often very difficult for a foreigner to know just what to do under certain circumstances. In Germany, for instance, the doctor does not in general send in his bill as is done in Canada, but the patient pays according to his rank, as well as according to the reputation of the physician who has treated him. On one occasion, it is reported that the doctor received only five *thaler* instead of the six he had expected. He let the pieces fall by accident as it were, and then kept on looking for a sixth piece so long, that the patient was forced to take the hint and add it to the five he had already handed the clever physician.

37.

König Karl II. von England und Bischof Stillingfleet.

„Wie kommt es," fragte eines Tages der König den Bischof, „daß Ihr in meiner kleinen Kapelle Eure Predigten stets ablest, während Ihr in den größten Kirchen meines Königreiches immer frei vortraget?" Der Bischof antwortete hierauf: „In Gegenwart Eurer Königlichen Majestät darf ein einfacher Unterthan nicht wagen, die Augen aufzuschlagen. Aber weshalb lesen Eure Majestät," fuhr der Prälat fort, „Ihre Reden stets ab?" Lächelnd erwiderte König Karl: „Ich habe die Lords und die Gemeinen schon so oft um große Summen gebeten, daß ich gar nicht mehr den Muth habe, denselben ins Gesicht zu sehen."

Charles II. of England and Bishop Stillingfleet.

Charles II. of England seems to have been very much inclined to joke with his subjects, if one is to believe all the stories told of him, and they are certainly probable enough, judging by his well-known good nature. It is said that he one day asked a certain bishop why he always read his sermon in his presence. To this the bishop answered that a subject should always cast down his eyes modestly in the presence of a king. "And might I ask why your Majesty always reads the speeches from the throne in the House of Commons?" said the bishop, with a smile. Charles answered good-humoredly and truthfully, "I haven't the courage to look them in the face any longer, after having asked them so often for such large sums of money."

38.

Ein ehrlicher Arzt.

Dr. Hood saß eines Tages mit mehreren Kollegen beim Wein und erzählte von fünfzehn Patienten, die er noch besuchen müsse. Dabei machte er aber keine Miene, wegzugehen; es wurde spät, und Dr. Hood bestellte noch ein Paar Flaschen.

„Wäre es jetzt nicht Zeit, Doktor," mahnte ihn ein Kollege, „nach den Kranken zu sehen—es wird spät!"

„Pah," sagte Hood, „neun davon haben eine so schlechte Konstitution, daß alle Aerzte der Welt ihnen nicht mehr helfen können, und die andern sechs eine so gute Konstitution, daß alle Aerzte der Welt sie nicht umbringen können!"

An Honest Physician.

A good constitution is one of the greatest blessings anyone can enjoy. Even doctors will admit that in many cases it is not the medicine but the constitution that saves the patient's life. Of course it would not do to neglect physicians altogether, for every day the science of medicine is making advances, and the advice of a skilled man cannot but be of use. A famous English physician, sitting over his wine, was telling his colleagues the number of patients he had to visit yet before going home. He kept on ordering bottle after bottle, however, until one of his friends got anxious and asked him if he had not better be looking after his sick. The doctor looked at the clock, saw that it was pretty late, and said: "It doesn't matter, for some of them have such good constitutions that they do not need me, and I couldn't help the others if I tried, their constitutions are so bad."

39.

Offizier und Bettler.

Ein in Lumpen gehüllter Bettler bat eines Tages in Paris einen Offizier um ein Almosen. Barsch wies ihn dieser ab. „Gnädiger Herr," sagte der Bettler, „hätten Sie mir nicht einst das Leben gerettet, so wäre ich nicht so tief gesunken und brauchte mein Brot nicht vor den Thüren zu erbetteln." Erstaunt rief der Offizier: „Ich Ihnen das Leben gerettet? Sie irren sich, ich sehe Sie heute das erste Mal." Der Bettler erwiderte: „Es war in der Schlacht

an der Katzbach; Sie ergriffen die Flucht, ich folgte Ihrem Beispiel und entging so den mörderischen Kugeln. Sie sind also mein Lebensretter." Verblüfft ging der Offizier von dannen.

Officer and Beggar.

Beggars who wander about the streets and ask for alms have very often quite wit enough to earn an honest living if they only had the inclination. At any rate, so much might be said with certainty of the beggar who made up the following clever story to punish an officer for his harsh repulse: "You saved my life in battle ten years ago," commenced the beggar. The officer, however, declared that he had never seen the man until that day, and inquired how it had happened. The beggar answered that he had followed the officer's example, when he turned to run, and so had escaped with his life. Another beggar asked a millionaire for alms, and the rich man to get rid of him answered shortly that he hadn't a penny. The beggar then produced a penny from some mysterious hiding-place in his rags and offered it to the millionaire, saying in a pitying tone, "Here, my friend, I have two, and will share with you."

40.

Der Heuchler

Ein spanischer Rekrut stellte sich taub und wurde daraufhin längere Zeit im Hospital von den Aerzten beobachtet.

Schon sollte derselbe aus dem Dienst entlassen werden, als eines Tages ein vor ihm die Treppe hinabschreitender Arzt wie im Selbstgespräch äußerte: „Der arme Kerl ist so zufrieden und hat keine Ahnung davon, daß er heute Morgen aus Versehen Gift einnahm!"

Da ſchrie der angeblich Taube plötzlich auf und faßte mit beiden Händen nach dem Magen.

„Kommen Sie, Freundchen," ſagte der Arzt, „und laſſen Sie ſich in der Kaſerne ſchnell ein Gegengift geben."

The Hypocrite.

Military service is not always a very pleasant thing, especially for the recruits. It seemed so dreadful to a certain young Spaniard that he pretended to be deaf, in order not to be compelled to serve. The doctor, suspecting that the deafness was only pretended, ordered him to the hospital, and observed him very closely for several days, but without being able to quite convince himself of the fact. So he thought out a plan to compel the recruit to show from fright that he could hear perfectly well. On one of his morning visits to his patients, he gave orders to the nurse to send the recruit down stairs immediately after him on some message. The doctor was descending slowly and with a very dejected air. As soon as the recruit was close behind him, he shook his head and said as if to himself, "The poor fellow, I wonder if it would, after all, be best to tell him that he took poison by mistake, he has only a few hours to live." The young fellow's cry of horror and despair proved to him at once that his suspicion was well grounded, and he told the pretender sharply that he would find an antidote for the poison and a cure for his deafness, too, at the barracks.

41.

König und Höflinge.

König Ludwig XVI. ſaß eines Tages beim Spiel, als er mit ſeinem Gegner über einen Wurf in Streit gerieth. Der König wollte den Wurf nicht gelten laſſen, während ſein Gegner denſelben lebhaft vertheidigte. Sämmtliche Höflinge ſchwiegen. In dieſem

Augenblick trat Graf Grammont ein. „Gut, daß Sie kommen," rief der König, „Sie sollen entscheiden, wer von uns beiden Unrecht hat." Ohne weiteres antwortete Grammont: „Majestät sind ganz gewiß im Unrecht." Ganz erstaunt sagte der König: „Aber, mein lieber Graf, wie können Sie behaupten, daß ich im Unrecht bin, wenn Sie nicht einmal wissen, um was es sich handelt?" Lächelnd erwiderte Graf Grammont: „Majestät, wenn Sie auch nur den Schein eines Rechtes für sich hätten, würde auch nicht ein einziger von diesen Herren da schweigen."

King and Courtiers.

We rarely find a courtier so quick to decide against a king as once happened with Louis XVI., king of France. He was very fond of chess, and one day as he was playing with a courtier, he got into a dispute with him about a move the latter made. A certain Count Grammont entered the room just at that moment and noticed the general silence as well as the excitement of the monarch. "Here is Count Grammont, he shall decide," said the king. Imagine the royal astonishment when the count answered immediately, "Your Majesty is wrong." "But you do not know what we are disputing about!" cried the king. "Oh, that doesn't matter," replied Grammont. "How in the world can you decide without knowing?" asked the king. "Well," returned Grammont, "does your Majesty suppose for a moment that all these courtiers would say nothing if you had the shadow of a right? Most assuredly not." "You are a clever judge," was all the king said, and the play went on.

42.

Ertappt.

Der englische Arzt, Dr. Garth, schrieb eines Tages in einem Kaffeehause einen Brief, ärgerte sich dabei aber sehr über einen unverschämten Irländer, der am nächsten Tische saß, ihm fort-

während über die Schulter sah und Alles las, was er schrieb. Um den Mann gebührender Weise zu bestrafen, schrieb Garth zum Schlusse: „Ich würde Dir noch mehr mittheilen, aber dicht hinter mir sitzt ein frecher Kerl, der mir immer über die Schulter sieht und Alles liest, was ich schreibe." Der Irländer sprang wüthend auf und rief: „Was denken Sie, mein Herr! Glauben Sie, daß ich Ihren Brief las?" „Mein Herr," entgegnete der Arzt und drehte sich gelassen um, „ich habe nicht zu Ihnen gesprochen."—„Nein, aber Sie haben es niedergeschrieben!"—„Mein Herr, da Sie nach Ihrer Behauptung meinen Brief nicht gelesen, ist es unmöglich daß Sie dies wissen!"

Caught.

A famous general, whose name I have just now forgotten, was once sitting in front of an inn-door and was very much annoyed at an old man who kept walking up and down in front of, and staring hard at him. He had a strong desire to punish the insolent fellow in some way, but finally concluded to write some letters and not pay any more attention to him. No sooner had he commenced one, however, than the man went around behind him and began to read over his shoulder. Here was his opportunity. He wrote: "It is a very pretty place where I am stopping, but the beauty of the place is by no means so striking as the impudence of the inhabitants. One, a stupid, ignorant-looking old man, has stared at me until I really could not endure it any longer without having some occupation for my own eyes, and now, if such impertinence is at all credible to you, he is reading this letter over my shoulder." After writing a few sentences more about his journey hither, he glanced around to see how his letter had pleased the old man, but the latter was nowhere to be seen.

43.

Eine Fabel.

Ueber den Urſprung des Thees findet ſich in einem größeren chineſiſchen Sagenwerke folgende hübſche Fabel. Als um das Jahr 519 Daema, der Sohn eines indiſchen Königs, nach China kam, um dort den Buddhaismus zu verbreiten, führte er einen ſo ſtrengen Wandel, daß er nur von Kräutern lebte und in Folge eines Gelübdes niemals ſchlief, ſondern die Nächte mit Betrachtungen über das göttliche Weſen hinbrachte. Nach mehreren Jahren aber geſchah es, daß ihn der Schlaf übermannte; er erwachte, und unmuthig über ſeine Willensſchwäche ſchnitt er ſich die Augenwimpern ab und ſchleuderte ſie zornig hinweg. Wie erſtaunte aber der fromme Büßer, als er Tags darauf dieſe beiden Augenwimpern in zwei Pflanzen verwandelt ſah. Er koſtete davon und merkte, daß nach dem Genuß ſein Geiſt viel regſamer ward. Er empfahl hierauf dieſes Mittel ſeinen Anhängern, und ſo begründete ſich der Gebrauch des Thees.

Fables.

The Chinese fable given above is only one of a great number of the kind to be found in Oriental collections. A good many of them seem very improbable, and yet in each one there are elements of truth. We know, for example, that people can live on vegetables alone, for many do so. Whole nights may be spent in reflection, but that any one could do so for years without sleeping is not at all credible. It is doubtless true, as well, that the use of tea was due to accident, for that has been the case with many herbs and plants, as for example, the use of the potato.

Krummacher tells the following pretty story of the origin of the moss-rose. The angel who cares for the flowers and drops the dew on them in the quiet night, was sleeping one spring day in the shade of a rose-bush. When he awoke he

was very much refreshed, and said to the rose-bush, "I thank you for your sweet perfume and cooling shade. If you could ask for something more for yourself how gladly I would grant it to you." "Then adorn me with a new charm," begged the genius of the rose-bush in answer. And the angel of the flowers decked out the most beautiful of them all with simple moss, and there stood in modest dress the grandest of her class, the moss-rose.

44.

Ein Unterſchied.

König Karl XII. von Schweden hielt ſtrenge Kriegszucht in ſeinem Heere. Eines Tages hatte ein Soldat einem Bauern ein Huhn geſtohlen, der Bauer verklagte den Kriegsmann bei dem Könige, und dieſer verurtheilte den Miſſethäter ſofort zum Tode. Keck trat der Verurtheilte auf den Fürſten zu und rief mit zornbebender Stimme: „Ich ſoll ſterben, weil ich dem Bauern da ein Huhn geſtohlen habe? Aber Majeſtät haben ja dem Herrn dieſes Bauern das ganze Land genommen—was wird Ihnen denn dafür zu Theil?" Der König erbleichte, faßte ſich jedoch ſchnell und ſagte ruhigen Tones: „Der Unterſchied iſt nur der, mein Lieber, daß du das geſtohlene Huhn für dich verwandt haſt, während ich das eroberte Polen meinen Schweden ſchenke." Hierauf bezahlte König Karl dem Bauern das geſtohlene Huhn und winkte dem Soldaten, ſich zu entfernen; er hatte ihm das Leben geſchenkt.

A Difference.

A soldier in the army of Charles XII. was condemned to death by the king, because he had stolen a chicken from a peasant. The condemned man was very angry at this sentence, and in a voice full of rage, accused the king of having also committed a theft, and declared that as he had taken a kingdom instead of merely a chicken, he was much more guilty.

The king was very much confused at first by the soldier's accusation, but quietly explained to him that there was a difference between the two cases, inasmuch as he had taken possession of Poland for the sake of his people, while the soldier had taken the chicken from the peasant only for his own use. That the king, however, recognized a degree of justice in the man's comparison, is proved by the fact that he simply ordered the soldier to withdraw and did not have him punished in any way for his breach of discipline. This seems to indicate that Charles XII. was a man of larger mind than Frederick the Great, who once asked a physician how many people he had removed from the world, and on receiving the answer, "Less than your Majesty and with less glory," was very much offended.

45.

Joſeph II. und ſein Miniſter.

Kaunitz hatte Kaiſer Joſeph einen Geſetzesvorſchlag gemacht, welcher dem Fürſten auf das tiefſte mißfiel. Aergerlich ſchrieb er unter das Aktenſtück: „Kaunitz iſt ein Eſel. Joſeph II." Als der Miniſter in das Kabinet des Kaiſers trat, überreichte ihm dieſer das Aktenſtück mit der Aufforderung, die Kritik deſſelben laut vorzuleſen. Kaunitz ſchüttelte mit feinem Lächeln den Kopf und erwiderte, er könne die ſchriftliche Bemerkung des Kaiſers unmöglich laut vorleſen. Als Joſeph II. ganz erſtaunt nach dem Grunde fragte, antwortete der Miniſter, er würde ſich dadurch einer Majeſtätsbeleidigung ſchuldig machen. Aufs höchſte verwundert befahl jetzt der Kaiſer ausdrücklich ſeinem Miniſter, die von ihm ſelbſt geſchriebene Bemerkung vorzuleſen, und Kaunitz las, dem Befehle gehorſam: „Kaunitz iſt ein Eſel, Joſeph der Zweite." Der Kaiſer brach in ein ſchallendes Gelächter aus, in welches der Miniſter bald zögernd einſtimmte.

Joseph II. and his Minister.

The story of Joseph II. and his minister Kaunitz somewhat resembles that of Louis XVI. and Count Grammont. In both cases the servant was cleverer than the master. With Count Grammont the cleverness consisted in reading from the silence of the other courtiers the judgment they had made, and thus deciding correctly without knowing the facts of the dispute. At the same time he ran less risk of offending his master than as though he had decided against him after hearing all the circumstances. There was also a certain subtle flattery in his proof of how greatly opinions and judgments are influenced by the personalty of a king.

With Kaunitz the cleverness consisted in so reading and accenting the emperor's written judgment that the latter could not but see how ridiculous his criticism was. Of the two Kaunitz was the bolder, and quite rightly, because Joseph had been very foolish in his criticism. We can imagine how astonished the emperor was at this striking example of how entirely a change of accent may change the whole meaning of a sentence, but he showed his real good feeling and common sense by laughing heartily. Another emperor of Austria might have accused him of high treason.

46.

Paſtor Götze und Minna von Barnhelm.

Bei der erſten Aufführung von Leſſings „Minna von Barnhelm" in Hamburg war ein Offizier von dem Stücke derart entzückt, daß er den Satiriker Dreier, welcher neben ihm ſaß, nach dem Verfaſſer fragte. Lächelnd erwiderte ihm Dreier, Paſtor Götze, der bekannte Gegner des Dichters, ſei der Verfaſſer. Am nächſten Tage begab ſich der Offizier zu Götze und ſtattete ihm ſeinen herzlichſten Dank für den überaus ſchönen Genuß ab, welchen ihm das Bühnenſtück

bereitet habe. Wüthend sprang der fanatische Pastor auf und geleitete den völlig verblüfften Offizier unter keineswegs schmeichelhaften Komplimenten zur Thür hinaus. Der Offizier erkannte sofort, daß ihn der Satiriker zum Besten gehabt hatte, und als er eines Tages Dreier in einem Kaffeehause sitzen sah, trat er auf denselben zu und gab ihm ohne weiteres eine Ohrfeige. Alles sprang auf, doch Dreier blieb sitzen und sagte mit ruhigem Lächeln: „Aha, Sie sind dort gewesen!"

Pastor Götze and Minna von Barnhelm.

Lessing's "Minna von Barnhelm" is one of the finest comedies in the German language, and must have been a welcome surprise to the theatre-goers of that time. We may well believe the story of the officer who was so pleased with the soldier-piece that he tried to hunt up the author, to thank him personally for the great pleasure he had experienced when he saw the play performed. It must have been, therefore, a very great surprise to the officer when Pastor Götze, who was Lessing's bitterest opponent, showed him out of the door with no very complimentary words. Of course the officer recognized at once that the friend, who told him Götze was the author, had been joking with him, and so determined to punish him for it. The latter, too, doubtless took the officer's box on the ear so very good-humoredly because he expected some punishment for his joke and knew he deserved it as well. All who were present must have expected a great scene, probably a challenge to a duel, so Dreier's quiet "Oh, you've been there!" must have been utterly incomprehensible to them.

47.

Baseler Uhren.

Nach den Reiseberichten aus dem vorigen Jahrhunderte gingen die Uhren der Stadt Basel sämmtlich eine Stunde zu früh. Eine

Sage meldet darüber Folgendes: Als vor etwa 500 Jahren die Stadt belagert wurde, beſchloſſen die Feinde, dieſelbe anzugreifen, wann die große Glocke die erſte Stunde nach Mitternacht verkünde. Durch Zufall erfuhr ein Uhrmacher den geplanten Sturm und ſtellte die Uhr ſo, daß ſie ſtatt eins ſofort zwei ſchlug. Die Feinde wurden hierdurch ſo getäuſcht und derart verwirrt, daß ſie von der Belagerung abließen und abzogen. Zum Andenken an dieſe patriotiſche That ließ man die Uhr ruhig ſo weiter ſchlagen und ſtellte auch die übrigen Uhren eine Stunde vor. Das währte mehrere Jahrhunderte hindurch. Der Verſuch der Behörden, die richtige Zeit einzuführen, rief wiederholt eine Empörung der Bürgerſchaft hervor.

The Clocks of Basel.

In many old towns in Europe are to be seen curious objects, such as buildings, towers, walls, which do not seem to have any connection with the life of to-day, but which, on investigation, are found to be very interesting as relics of the past. Now-a-days these old remains are being done away with, much to the disgust of those who like to keep up a connection with former times. Some curious customs are also to be explained in the same way. How strange it would seem to us to visit a town where all the clocks were an hour ahead of time! And yet we are told in old books of travel that this was the case years ago in Basel. It happened as follows:—Some five or six centuries ago Basel was besieged by a large army and the leader of the enemy decided to make the attack just when the great town bell should strike one in the morning. A faithful guard heard the bustle in the enemy's camp and also by accident the hour when the storming was to begin. What could he do to prevent the attack? Why, if the enemy should not hear the clock strike one, of course they would not make the attempt. So he at once set the clock so that it would strike two. The plan succeeded perfectly: the enemy thoroughly

deceived withdrew, and the town was saved. In memory of this deliverance the clocks were always kept an hour too fast, and moreover, a statue of the guard was set up in the market-place.

48.

Die Sitten unſerer Voreltern.

Unſere Voreltern im Mittelalter ſtanden, oder, wie es damals hieß, „ſtiegen" im Sommer um 4 Uhr, im Winter vor 6 Uhr auf, genoſſen nach dem Ankleiden eine Suppe, gingen dann regelmäßig zur Frühmeſſe und begannen alsdann des Tages Arbeit. Um 10 Uhr wurde ordentlich geſpeiſt; das eigentliche Hauptmahl erfolgte indeß um 4 Uhr Nachmittags. Unſere Jungen hatten es im Mittelalter weſentlich unbequemer, als jetzt; ſie mußten, da der Schulunterricht um 6 Uhr begann, früh aufſtehen. Um 9 Uhr war der Vormittagsunterricht zu Ende und es trat bis 12 Uhr eine Pauſe ein; dann wurde wieder bis 3 Uhr gearbeitet und unterrichtet. So war alſo die Ordnung des Tages bei Reich und Arm. Um 7 Uhr oder ſpäteſtens um 8 Uhr ging man im Winter ſchlafen. Und daß um 9 Uhr des Abends in ſchönſter Sommerzeit alles in den Betten war und auf den Straßen Nachtruhe herrſchte, wird wiederholt und ausdrücklich bezeugt.

The Customs of our Forefathers.

It is a very interesting study to compare the customs of different peoples, and also to trace the changes in customs among any one people from century to century. Even to-day the little children who attend the schools for the poorer classes in Germany have to be in their places at 7 a.m. In the universities, too, lectures are often given at the same hour, though generally only in summer. Eight o'clock in winter is, however, a regular hour for all university classes. In the Middle Ages work began even earlier, as we learn from his-

tory, and no one was allowed to lie in bed until eight or nine o'clock in the morning, as so many do now-a-days. If scholars had to go to six o'clock classes, they would of course have to have their breakfast still earlier, and we are told that a light breakfast was in fact eaten before six a.m., then a good meal was taken about ten, and the principal one about four p.m. These would then correspond to our breakfast, dinner and supper. Getting up early and early meals compelled early retiring, so that eight in the evening was quite late in the opinion of our forefathers. Students who are fond of such studies will also find plenty of interesting material to engage their attention in the history of the theatre. For instance, why is a matinee given in the afternoon? These and all such questions belong to what the Germans call "*Kulturgeschichte*," the study of which is indeed very attractive.

49.

Das Diner des Cardinals.

Cardinal Feſch, der Oheim Napoleons I., lebte ſehr zurückgezogen, empfing nur wenige Perſonen und warf kaum einen Blick in die Zeitungen. Drei- oder viermal im Jahre gab er ein Diner, zu welchem er die Einladungen ſelbſt ergehen ließ. Selten ſagte einer der Geladenen ab, und noch ſeltener kam jemand zu ſpät. Wie erſtaunten daher die Gäſte, als man eines Tages um 6 Uhr noch nicht zu Tiſche ging. Endlich fragte einer der Geladenen den Cardinal, ob er noch Gäſte erwarte. Die Antwort lautete bejahend. Wiederum verfloß eine halbe Stunde, und niemand ließ ſich ſehen. Endlich ſprach man die Vermuthung aus, der Erwartete möchte vielleicht krank ſein. „Das iſt unmöglich," erwiderte Feſch, „der Herr Senator Graf von Boville-Ceroux hätte abſagen laſſen."— „Aber Eminenz, der Graf ruht ja bereits ſechs Monate im Grabe!" Lächelnd ſagte der Kirchenfürſt: „Wirklich, daß iſt ſchade! Nun, dann wollen wir ſchnell zu Tiſche gehen und denken, der würdige Herr ſitze mitten unter uns."

The Cardinal's Dinner.

When a person in high position, such as a governor or prince of the church gives a dinner, the invitation is generally accepted, for it is almost equivalent to a command. Not only is the invitation not declined, but it is necessary to appear punctually at the hour named. No wonder then, that the guests of Napoleon's uncle, Cardinal Fesch, wondered very much one day when they were kept waiting a long time. At last one ventured to ask the cardinal if other guests were expected. The answer was in the affirmative. Of course they tried to wait patiently, but at last some one suggested that the expected guest must be ill or have met with an accident. The cardinal answered, "Count Boville would send an excuse in such a case." "Oh, but, your eminence, Count Boville has been dead six months." "Why, that is really too bad! Let us go to dinner at once, and imagine that our friend is in our midst."

How did the cardinal make that mistake? Well, he lived in retirement and never read a newspaper. Perhaps when we think of the newspapers of those days, we will not blame him.

50.

Eine vorſichtige Wirthin.

Friedrich der Große wollte auf ſeiner Reiſe nach Holland einmal die berühmten holländiſchen Paſteten koſten und beauftragte deshalb ſeinen Adjutanten, bei der Wirthin des Gaſthauſes, in welchem der König abgeſtiegen war, eine Paſtete zu beſtellen. Die Wirthin ſagte kühl: „Sie wollen eine Paſtete? Das iſt ganz ſchön. Aber haben Sie auch Geld, zu bezahlen? Eine Paſtete koſtet viel Geld." Lächelnd erwiderte der Adjutant, ſein Herr könne wohl bezahlen, da er ein großer Künſtler ſei und im nächſten Konzerte

eine große Einnahme zu erzielen hoffe. „Nun, da muß ich den Herrn erſt ſelbſt hören," meinte die vorſichtige Wirthin, begab ſich in das Zimmer des Königs und redete dieſen folgendermaßen an: „Mein Herr, ich höre, Sie können gut pfeifen. Bitte, pfeifen Sie mir einmal etwas vor!" Den großen König beluſtigte die Bitte der Frau; lächelnd holte er ſeine Flöte hervor und ſpielte meiſterhaft, ſo daß die Wirthin ganz verwundert ausrief: „Ja, ja, Sie pfeifen ſchön und werden gewiß viel Geld damit verdienen. Nun ſollen Sie auch eine Paſtete bekommen!"

A Careful Landlady.

The peasants in Holland are noted for their sharpness, and the landlady mentioned in the preceding anecdote was no exception. She made the pretended artist, who came to her inn, prove to her that he was able to play the flute well enough to earn money before she would consent to make him the tart his servant had ordered from her. It would seem that the king, for so he was, was travelling incognito, and it is quite possible that the good woman had been cheated out of her money by some unknown traveller, so that she was unwilling to be deceived again. At any rate, for some reason or other, she was very distrustful. It is said that the king was greatly amused at her request, and he knew as well as anyone how to appreciate her caution, for he had also learned to try people before trusting them.

Princes and rulers have in all ages taken great pleasure in travelling around disguised, and in this way getting the opportunity of laying aside the burden of court etiquette. Of no one are more stories told in this regard than of the late Emperor Frederick, who seems to have been the soul of kindness and was always helping some unfortunate just at the right moment, and without the latter knowing from whose hand the help really came. It is therefore easy to understand why "unser Fritz" was so popular among the people.

51.

Mailuft.*

Sonnenschein und Blütenduft,
Das ist ein Vergnügen!
Wann in blauer Maienluft
Hoch die Lerchen fliegen.
Wann des Baches Wellen sich
Durch die Blumen schmiegen,
Und die Schmetterlinge sich
Auf den Halmen wiegen.
Ach, wie ist es da so schön
Tief im Gras zu liegen
Und zum Himmel aufzusehen!
Das ist ein Vergnügen!

—Reinick.

52.

Wacht auf!

Es ruft der Hahn: "Wacht auf, wacht auf!
Bald geht die liebe Sonne auf;
Und trifft ein Kind sie schlafend an,
Da hat sie keine Freude dran.
Doch sprang ein Kind schon aus dem Bett,
Hat sich gewaschen flink und nett,
Das liebt sie recht aus Herzensgrund,
Und macht es kräftig und gesund,
Und giebt ihm vieles, was ihm frommt.
Wacht auf, wacht auf! Die Sonne kommt!"

---

* The succeeding ten selections are also taken from Robert Reinick's Märchen Leider und Geschichtenbuch.

53.

Ostern.

Ostern ist Morgen: nun Grete, mach schnell!
Bring uns die Eier nur hurtig zur Stell';
Dass wir bemalt sie im Garten verstecken,
Farbige Früchte in Büschen und Hecken!
Will uns der Frühling zum Schmaus nichts versorgen,
Müssen wir selber ihm Früchte schon borgen.

54.

Mai.

Frühling, Frühling überall
Blüten allenthalben;
Horch, wie rauscht der Bach im Thal,
Sieh, schon Störch und Schwalben!
Lämmer springen auf den Weiden,
Kinder singen voller Freuden,
Kuckuck ruft und Nachtigall;
Frühling, Frühling überall!

55.

Frühlingsruf.

Ein Vogel, ein Vogel! O hört wie er singt,
Wie hell durch den Garten sein Stimmlein erklingt!
Er rufet: "Ihr Kinder! Ihr Lämmer! heraus!
Ihr Kinder zum Spielen, Ihr Lämmer zum Schmaus!"
Und alles auf Erden und hoch in der Luft
Das lacht und erfreut sich an Blüten und Duft:
Was Flossen hat, schwimmt, was Beine hat, springt!
Was Flügel hat, fliegt; und wer singen kann, singt.

56.

Sommer.

Dem Sommer, dem bin ich
Absonderlich gut,
An alt und an jung
So viel Gutes er thut.

Giebt Guten und Bösen
Ihr tägliches Brot,
Und trocknet viel Thränen
Und stillt manche Not.

Und spricht zu den Kindern:
"*Nun kommt 'mal und seht,*
Was zwischen dem Korn ich
Für euch hingesät!

Die Kornblum' so blau
Und den grellrothen Mohn,
Die pflückt euch und macht euch
Ein Kränzel davon!

Und wünscht ihr noch recht
Etwas Lust' ges dazu,
Da schick ich die Schmetterling',
Auch noch euch zu.

Und der Kuckuck soll rufen,
Die Frösch' sollen schrein,
Nun kommet und spielet
Und vertraget euch fein!"

57.

Die Ernte.

Der liebe Gott mit milder Hand
Bedeckt mit Segen rings das Land:
Schon steht die Saat in voller Pracht,
Ein Zeuge seiner Güt' und Macht.

Nun ernte Mensch, was du gesät,
Sei froh und sprich ein fromm Gebet,
Und gieb von dem, was dir verliehn
Auch deinen armen Brüdern hin.

So streust du neue Saaten aus,
Und ew'ger Segen blüht daraus,
Dann wird dein Herz voll Sonnenschein,
Ein Erntefest dein Leben sein.

58.

Im Ährenfeld.

Seht, wie überall
Reif die Ähre schwellt,
Welche goldne Pracht
In dem weiten Feld!
Hundertfach erfüllt sich
Eines Kornes Saat;
Tausandfach vergilt sich
Eine gute That.

59.

Winter.

Wohin man schaut, nur Schnee und Eis,
Der Himmel grau, die Erde weiss ;
Hei, wie der Wind so lustig pfeift !
Hei, wie er in die Backen kneift !
Doch meint er's mit den Leuten gut,
Erfrischt und stärkt, macht frohen Mut,
Ihr Stubenhocker, schämet euch,
Kommt nur heraus, thut es uns gleich.
Bei Wind und Schnee auf glatter Bahn
Da hebt erst recht der Jubel an !

60.

Reiterlied.

Herr Reiter, mein Reiter, nun reit Er 'mal aus
Und bring Er mir recht etwas Schönes nach Haus ;
Aus Nürenberg Spielzeug, und Putz aus Berlin,
Und Bücher aus Leipzig, und Backwerk aus Wien.

Und kommt 'mal ein Wetter, un regnet's einmal,
Da führ' Er sein Pferd nur nicht gleich in den Stall.
Ein Reiter wie Er muss kein Nestkükel sein !
Durch Sturmwind und Regen ! Geritten muss sein !

Herr Reiter, mein Reiter, und trink' Er mal gern :
Am Weg steht ein Wirthshaus, am Thor hängt ein Stern.
Und isst er dort Braten, und trinkt er dort Wein—
Auf meine Gesundheit ! Sonst darf es nicht sein !

Herr Reiter ! und kommen Ihm Räuber entgegen,
Da greift Er nur gleich nach Pistolen und Degen.
Ein Reiter wie Er darf kein Hasenfuss sein,
Da mach Er nicht Flausen und schlag Er darein.

61.

Beſtrafter Hochmut.

(Eine Fabel.)

Die Wespe summt dem Ross ums Ohr,
Das spricht: "Hör' auf, sonst schlag' ich!"
Die Wespe spricht: "Versuch's, du Thor!
Dein Schlagen, das ertrag' ich.
Komm! Statt zu drohen, kämpf mit mir!"
Da lacht voll Hohn das stolze Thier:
"Elender Wurm, nicht ziemt es mir,
Zu wechseln noch ein Wort mit dir!"

Die Wespe aber fliegt, nicht faul,
Dem Stolzen auf den Rücken,
Es wiehert, schnaubt, es schlägt der Gaul,
Sie hört nicht auf zu zwicken;
Sie fliegt ihm endlich gar ins Ohr
Und sticht, und ruht nicht, bis der Thor,
Nachdem er fast vor Qual vergeht,
Den "Wurm" zuletzt um Gnade fleht.

62.

Lied des Fiſcherknaben.

Es lächelt der See, er ladet zum Bade.
Der Knabe schlief ein am grünen Gestade,
Da hört er ein Klingen,
Wie Flöten so süss
Wie Stimmen der Engel
Im Paradies.
Und wie er erwachet in seliger Lust,
Da spülen die Wasser ihm um die Brust,
Und es ruft aus den Tiefen:
Lieb Knabe, bist mein!
Ich locke den Schläfer,
Ich zieh' ihn herein. —Schiller.

63.

Lied des Alpenjägers.

Es donnern die Höhen, es zittert der Steg,
Nicht grauet dem Schützen auf schwindlichem Weg;
Er schreitet verwegen
Auf Feldern von Eis;
Da pranget kein Frühling,
Da grünet kein Reis;
Und unter den Füssen ein neblichtes Meer;
Erkennt er die Städte der Menschen nicht mehr;
Durch den Riss nur der Wolken
Erblickt er die Welt,
Tief unter den Wassern
Das grünende Feld.

—Schiller.

64.

Sommernacht.

Nun liegt die Welt im Traume,
Berauscht von Glanz und Duft—
Kein Blatt regt sich am Baume,
Kein Vöglein in der Luft.

Die müden Sterne neigen
Zur Ruh' schon ihren Lauf,
Doch mir im Herzen steigen
Noch schön're Sterne auf.

Was mir der Tag beschieden,
Ward sorglos nie vollbracht,
Doch selig ist der Frieden
Der stillen heiligen Nacht!

—Bodenstedt.

65.

Heidelberg.

Alt Heïdelberg, du feine,
Du Stadt an Ehren reich,
Am Neckar und am Rheine
Kein' andre kommt dir gleich.

Stadt fröhlicher Gesellen,
An Weisheit schwer und Wein,
Klar ziehn des Stromes Wellen,
Blauäuglein blitzen drein.

Und kommt aus lindem Süden
Der Frühling übers Land,
So webt er dir aus Blüten
Ein schimmernd Brautgewand.

Auch mir stehst du geschrieben
Ins Herz gleich einer Braut
Es klingt wie junges Lieben
Dein Name mir so traut.

Und stechen mich die Dornen,
Und wird mir's drauss zu kahl,
Geb' ich dem Ross die Spornen
Und reit' ins Neckarthal.

—Scheffel.

PART III.

FABLES AND EXTRACTS

FOR

TRANSLATION INTO GERMAN.

FABLES AND EXTRACTS

FOR TRANSLATION INTO GERMAN.

66.

The Bat and the Weasels.

A Bat falling upon the ground was caught by a Weasel, of whom he earnestly besought his life. The Weasel refused, saying, that he was by nature the enemy of all birds. The Bat assured him that he was not a bird, but a mouse, and thus saved his life. Shortly afterwards the Bat again fell on the ground, and was caught by another Weasel, whom he likewise entreated not to eat him. The Weasel said that he had a special hostility to mice. The Bat assured him that he was not a mouse, but a bird; and thus a second time escaped.

67.

The Fisherman Piping.

A Fisherman skilled in music took his flute and his nets to the sea-shore. Standing on a projecting rock he played several tunes, in the hope that the fish, attracted by his melody, would of their own accord dance into his net, which he had placed below. At last, having long waited in vain, he laid aside his flute, and casting his net into the sea, made an excellent haul of fish. When he saw them leaping about in the net upon the rock he said: "O you most perverse creatures, when I piped you would not dance, but now that I have ceased you do so merrily."

68.

The Lion and the Mouse.

A Lion was awakened from sleep by a Mouse running over his face. Rising up in anger, he caught it and was about to kill it, when the Mouse piteously entreated, saying: "If you would only spare my life, I would be sure to repay your kindness." The Lion laughed and let it go. It happened shortly after this that the Lion was caught by some hunters, who bound him by strong ropes to the ground. The Mouse, recognizing his roar, came up, and gnawed the rope with its teeth, and setting him free, exclaimed: "You ridiculed the idea of my ever being able to help you, not expecting to receive from me any repayment of your favour; but now you know that it is possible for even a Mouse to confer benefits on a Lion."

69.

The Salt Merchant and his Ass.

A Pedlar, dealing in salt, drove his Ass to the sea-shore to buy salt. His road home lay across a stream, in passing which his Ass, making a false step, fell by accident into the water, and rose up again with his load considerably lighter, as the water melted the salt. The Pedlar retraced his steps, and refilled his panniers with a larger quantity of salt than before. When he came again to the stream, the Ass fell down on purpose in the same spot, and, regaining his feet with the weight of his load much diminished, brayed triumphantly as if he had obtained what he desired. The Pedlar saw through his trick, and drove him for the third time to the coast, where he bought a cargo of sponges instead of salt. The Ass, again playing the knave, when he reached the stream, fell down on purpose, when the sponges becoming swollen with the water, his load was very greatly increased; and thus his trick recoiled on himself in fitting to his back a doubled burden.

70.

The Fox and the Goat.

A Fox having fallen into a deep well, was detained a prisoner there, as he could find no means of escape. A Goat, overcome with thirst, came to the same well, and, seeing the Fox, enquired if the water was good. The Fox, concealing his sad plight under a merry guise, indulged in a lavish praise of the water, saying it was beyond measure excellent, and encouraged him to descend. The Goat, mindful only of his thirst, thoughtlessly jumped down, when just as he had quenched his thirst, the Fox informed him of the difficulty they were both in, and suggested a scheme for their common escape. "If," said he, "you will place your fore-feet upon the wall, and bend your head, I will run up your back and escape, and will help you out afterwards." On the Goat readily assenting to this second proposal, the Fox leapt upon his back, and steadying himself with the Goat's horns, reached in safety the mouth of the well, when he immediately made off as fast as he could. The Goat upbraided him with the breach of his bargain, when he turned round and cried out: "You foolish old fellow! If you had as many brains in your head as you have hairs in your beard, you would never have gone down before you had inspected the way up, nor have exposed yourself to dangers from which you had no means of escape."

71.

The Old Woman and the Physician.

An old woman having lost the use of her eyes, called in a Physician to heal them, and made this bargain with him in the presence of witnesses: that if he should cure her blindness, he should receive from her a sum of money; but if her infirmity remained, she should give him nothing. This agree-

ment being entered into, the Physician, time after time, applied his salve to her eyes, and on every visit taking something away, stole by little and little all her property: and when he had got all she had, he healed her, and demanded the promised payment. The old woman, when she recovered her sight and saw none of her goods in her house, would give him nothing. The Physician insisted on his claim, and, as she still refused, summoned her before the judge. The old woman standing up in the Court thus spoke:—"This man here speaks the truth in what he says; for I did promise to give him a sum of money, if I should recover my sight: but if I continued blind, I was to give him nothing. Now he declares that I am healed. I on the contrary affirm that I am still blind; for when I lost the use of my eyes, I saw in my house various chattels and valuable goods: but now, though he swears I am cured of my blindness, I am not able to see a single thing in it."

72.

The Dog and the Cook.

A rich man gave a great feast, to which he invited many friends and acquaintances. His dog availed himself of the occasion to invite a stranger dog, a friend of his, saying, "My master gives a feast; you will have unusually good cheer; come and sup with me to-night." The Dog thus invited went at the hour appointed, and seeing the preparations for so grand an entertainment, said, in the joy of his heart, "How glad I am that I came! I do not often get such a chance as this. I will take care and eat enough to last me both to-day and to-morrow." While he thus congratulated himself, and wagged his tail, as if he would convey a sense of his pleasure to his friend, the Cook saw him moving about among his dishes, and, seizing him by his fore and hind paws, bundled him without ceremony out of the window. He fell with force

upon the ground, and limped away, howling dreadfully. His yelling soon attracted other street dogs, who came up to him, and inquired how he had enjoyed his supper. He replied, "Why, to tell you the truth, I drank so much wine that I remember nothing. I do not know how I got out of the house."

Uninvited guests seldom meet a welcome.

73.

The Thief and the Innkeeper.

A Thief hired a room in a tavern, and stayed some days, in the hope of stealing something which should enable him to pay his reckoning. When he had waited some days in vain, he saw the Innkeeper dressed in a new and handsome coat, and sitting before his door. The Thief sat down beside him, and talked with him. As the conversation began to flag, the Thief yawned terribly, and at the same time howled like a wolf. The Innkeeper said, "Why do you howl so fearfully?" "I will tell you," said the Thief: "but first let me ask you to hold my clothes, for I wish to leave them in your hands. I know not, sir, when I got this habit of yawning, nor whether these attacks of howling were inflicted on me as a judgment for my crimes, or for any other cause; but this I do know, that when I yawn for the third time, I actually turn into a wolf, and attack men." With this speech he commenced a second fit of yawning, and again howled like a wolf, as he did at first. The Innkeeper hearing his tale, and, believing what he said, became greatly alarmed, and rising from his seat, attempted to run away. The Thief laid hold of his coat, and entreated him to stop, saying, "Pray wait, sir, and hold my clothes, or I shall tear them to pieces in my fury, when I turn into a wolf." At the same moment he yawned the third time, and set up a howl like a wolf. The Innkeeper, fright-

ened lest he should be attacked, left his new coat in his hand, and ran as fast as he could into the inn for safety. The Thief made off with his new coat, and did not return again to the inn.

74.

The Town Mouse and the Country Mouse.

A Country Mouse invited a Town Mouse, an intimate friend, to pay him a visit, and partake of his country fare. As they were on the bare plough-lands, eating their wheat-stalks and roots pulled up from the hedge-row, the Town Mouse said to his friend, "you live here the life of the ants: while in my house is the horn of plenty. I am surrounded with every luxury, and if you will come with me, as I much wish you would, you shall have an ample share of my dainties." The Country Mouse was easily persuaded, and returned to town with his friend. On his arrival the Town Mouse placed before him bread, barley, beans, dried figs, honey, raisins, and, last of all, brought a dainty piece of cheese from a basket. The Country Mouse, being much delighted at the sight of such good cheer, expressed his satisfaction in warm terms, and lamented his own hard fate. Just as they were beginning to eat, some one opened the door, and they both ran off squeaking as fast as they could to a hole so narrow that two could only find room in it by squeezing. They had scarcely again begun their repast when someone else entered to take something out of a cupboard, on which the two Mice, more frightened than before, ran away and hid themselves. At last the Country Mouse, almost famished, thus addressed his friend: "Although you have prepared for me so dainty a feast, I must leave you to enjoy it by yourself. It is surrounded by too many dangers to please me. I prefer my bare plough-lands and roots from the hedge-row, so that I only can live in safety, and without fear."

75.

Mercury and the Workmen.

A Workman, felling wood by the side of a river, let his axe drop by accident into a deep pool. Being thus deprived of the means of his livelihood, he sat down on the bank, and lamented his hard fate. Mercury appeared, and demanded the cause of his tears. He told him his misfortune, when Mercury plunged into the stream, and, bringing up a golden axe, inquired if that were the one he had lost. On his saying that it was not his, Mercury disappeared beneath the water a second time, and returned with a silver axe in his hand, and again demanded of the workman if it were his. On the workman saying it was not, he dived into the pool for the third time, and brought up the axe that had been lost. On the workman claiming it, and expressing his joy at its recovery, Mercury, pleased with his honesty, gave him the golden and the silver axes in addition to his own.

The Workman, on his return to his house, related to his companions all that had happened. One of them at once resolved to try whether he could not also secure the same good fortune to himself. He ran to the river, and threw his axe on purpose into the pool at the same place, and sat down on the bank to weep. Mercury appeared to him just as he hoped he would; and having learned the cause of his grief, plunged into the stream, and brought up a golden axe, and inquired if he had lost it. The workman seized it greedily, and declared that of a truth it was the very same axe that he had lost. Mercury, displeased at his knavery, not only took away the golden axe, but refused to recover for him the axe he had thrown into the pool.

76.

The Porridge-Pot.

There was once a poor but good little girl, who lived alone with her mother; and at last they had nothing left to eat. One day the child went out into the wood, and there she met an old woman who already knew her trouble. She gave her a little pot, and told her that whenever she said "Little pot, boil," it would at once boil a dish of good oatmeal porridge; and as soon as she said "Little pot, stop," then it would leave off boiling. The little girl brought the pot home to her mother and they were now rid of their poverty and hunger, and had good porridge as often as they liked. One day, when the little girl was gone into the wood, her mother went to the pot and said, "Little pot, boil." It began to boil at once, and the old woman ate as much as she could. Then she wanted the pot to stop, but she did not know the proper words. So the pot went on boiling, and the porridge boiled over, and ran down the sides; and still it boiled on until the kitchen and the whole house were full; and after that the next house, and then the street, as if the whole town had to be fed. And there was a dreadful excitement, and people were at their wits' end. At last, when there was only one house left, the child returned home, and she only said "Little pot, stop," when it stopped, and left off boiling. But whoever wanted to get back into the town had to eat his way through the porridge.

—*Grimm.*

77.

Hamlet and His Father's Ghost.

At the sight of his father's spirit, Hamlet was struck with a sudden surprise and fear. He at first called upon the angels and heavenly ministers to defend them, for he knew not whether it were a good spirit or bad: whether it came for good

or for evil: but he gradually assumed more courage: and his father (as it seemed to him) looked upon him so piteously, and as it were desiring to have conversation with him, and did in all respects appear so like himself as he was when he lived, that Hamlet could not help addressing him: he called him by his name Hamlet, King, Father! and conjured him that he would tell the reason why he had left his grave, where they had seen him quietly laid to rest, to come again and visit the earth and the moonlight: and besought him that he would let them know if there was anything which they could do to give peace to his spirit. And the ghost beckoned to Hamlet, that he should go with him to some more retired place, where they might be alone: and Horatio and Marcellus would have dissuaded the young prince from following it, for they feared lest it should be some evil spirit, who would tempt him to the neighbouring sea, or to the top of some dreadful cliff, and there put on some horrible shape which might deprive the prince of his reason. But their counsels and entreaties could not alter Hamlet's determination, who cared too little about life to fear the losing of it; and as to his soul, he said, what could the spirit do to that, being a thing immortal as itself? And he felt as bold as a lion; and bursting from them, who did all they could to hold him, he followed wheresoever the spirit led him. —*Lamb.*

78.

Hamlet Sent to England.

The unfortunate death of Polonius gave the king a pretence for sending Hamlet out of the kingdom. He would willingly have put him to death, fearing him as dangerous; but he dreaded the people, who loved Hamlet; and the queen, who, with all her faults, loved the prince, her son. So this subtle king, under pretence of providing for Hamlet's safety, that he

might not be called to account for Polonius's death, caused him to be conveyed on board a ship bound for England, under the care of two courtiers, by whom he despatched letters to the English court, which at that time was in subjection and paid tribute to Denmark, requiring, for special reasons there pretended, that Hamlet should be put to death as soon as he landed on English ground. Hamlet, suspecting some treachery, in the night time secretly got at the letters, and skilfully erasing his own name, he in the stead of it put in the names of those two courtiers, who had the charge of him * * * * * * then sealing up the letters, he put them into their place again. Soon after the ship was attacked by pirates, and a sea-fight commenced; in the course of which Hamlet, desirous to show his valour, with sword in hand singly boarded the enemy's vessel, while his own ship, in a cowardly manner, sailed away, and left him to his fate. The two courtiers made the best of their way to England, charged with those letters the sense of which Hamlet had altered to their own deserved destruction.

—*Lamb.*

79.

Lear and Cordelia.

A tender sight it was to see the meeting between this father and daughter: to see the struggles between the joy of this poor old king at beholding again his once darling child, and the shame at receiving such filial kindness from her whom he had cast off in his displeasure for so small a fault; both these passions struggling with the remains of his malady, which in his half-crazed brain sometimes made him that he scarce remembered where he was, or who it was that so kindly kissed and spoke to him: and then he would beg the standers-by not to laugh at him, if he were mistaken in thinking this lady to be his daughter Cordelia! And then to see him fall

on his knees to beg pardon of his child; and she kneeling all the while to ask a blessing of him, and telling him that it did not become him to kneel, but it was her duty, for she was his child, his true and very child Cordelia! And she kissed him (as she said) to kiss away all her sisters' unkindness, and said that they might be ashamed of themselves, to turn their old kind father with his white beard out into the cold air, when her enemy's dog, though it had bit her, should have stayed by her fire such a night as that, and warmed himself. And she told her father how she had come from France with purpose to bring him assistance; and he said, that she must forget and forgive, for he was old and foolish, and did not know what he did; but that to be sure she had great cause not to love him, but her sisters had none. And Cordelia said, that she had no cause, no more than they had. So we will leave this old king in the protection of this loving child, where, by the help of sleep and medicine, she and her physicians at length succeeded in winding up the untuned and jarring senses which the cruelty of his other daughters had so violently shaken. —*Lamb.*

80.

The Sandman.

There is no one in the whole world who knows so many stories as the Sandman! He is a regular story-teller. Towards evening when the children are still sitting at the table or on their chairs, the Sandman comes. He walks softly up the stairs, for he goes in stocking feet, opens the doors quite quietly and sprinkles little grains of sand in the children's eyes; so fine, so very fine, but always enough so that they cannot keep their eyes open and so see him. He slips up just behind them and blows softly on their necks, then their heads get heavy. But it doesn't hurt, for the Sandman's intentions

are good, he only wants them to be quiet, and they are quiet soonest when they have been put to bed; they are to be quiet that he may tell them stories. When the children are sleeping, then the Sandman sits down on their beds. He is well dressed, his coat is of silk material, but it is not possible to say of what colour, for it shines green, red or blue according as he turns around. Under each arm he holds an umbrella. The one with pictures on he opens out over the good children, and then they dream the most splendid stories all night: on the other one is nothing at all, he opens it out over the naughty children. Then they sleep, and in the morning when they wake up they have not dreamed the least bit at all. Now we shall hear how the Sandman came every evening in a week to a little boy called Frederick, and told him something. There are seven stories, for there are seven days in the week.

—*Andersen.*

81.

The Sandman's Monday Story.

"Just listen," said the Sandman in the evening when he had put Frederick to bed. "Now I'll fix up the room." Then all the flowers in the flower-pots became great trees, which stretched out their long branches under the ceiling and along the walls, so that the whole room looked like a splendid summerhouse. All the branches were full of flowers; every flower was prettier than a rose and smelled lovely, and if anybody wanted to eat them, they were sweeter than jam. The fruit glistened like gold, and cakes were there which were just bursting with raisins—it was incomparably lovely. But at the same time was heard a fearful wailing out of the table drawer where Frederick's school books lay. "What is that?" said the Sandman, and went to the table and opened the drawer. It was the slate in which there was such a tearing and tumbling, for a false figure had got into the sum, so that

it was very near falling to pieces; the pencil hopped and jumped at its string, exactly as though it had been a little dog, which would like to help the sum; but it couldn't. And there was a wailing, too, in Frederick's writing book, oh, it was ugly to listen to! On each leaf down its whole length stood the capitals, each with a little one at its side—that was the copy; beside them stood some other letters, which thought that they looked just the same. These Frederick had written; they lay almost as though they had fallen over the lead-pencil lines upon which they ought to stand. "See, you ought to hold yourselves like this," said the copy, "see, to the side, so, with a decided slope." "Oh, we should like to," said Frederick's letters, "but we can't, we are so miserable!" "Then you must have some medicine," said the Sandman. "Oh no!" they cried, and then they stood so gracefully that it was a pleasure to see them. "There will be no story told now," said the Sandman, "I must exercise them. One, two! one, two!" And so he exercised the letters, and they stood so neatly and beautifully, just like a copy. But when the Sandman was gone, and Frederick looked at them in the morning, there they were just as miserable as before.

—*Ibid.*

82.

The Sandman's Saturday Story.

"Shall I get to hear some stories now?" asked little Frederick as soon as the Sandman had put him to sleep. "To-night we have no time for that," said the Sandman, and opened out his most beautiful umbrella over him. "Just look at the Chinese!" The whole umbrella looked like a great Chinese dish with blue trees and pointed bridges, and with little Chinamen on it, who stood there and nodded with their heads. "We must have the whole world finely brushed up for to-morrow," said the Sandman. "To-morrow is Sunday,

you know. I want to visit the church towers to see whether the little church-elves are polishing the bells, that they may sound pretty. I want to go out into the fields and see whether the wind is blowing the dust from grass and leaves, and, what makes me most work, I want to take down all the stars to polish them. I take them in my apron: but first everyone must be numbered and the holes in which they sit up there must be numbered too, so that they may come in the right spot again, otherwise they would not stick fast, and there would be too many falling stars, while one after another was tumbling down."

"Here! do you know, Mr. Sandman?" said an old picture, which hung on the wall where Frederick was sleeping, "I am Frederick's great-grandfather; I thank you for telling the boy stories, but you must not spoil his ideas. The stars cannot come down and be polished! The stars are great globes just like our earth, that is just what is fine about them." "Thank you, thank you, old great-grandfather," said the Sandman, "you are of course the head of the family, you are the ancient head, but I am still older than you! I am an old heathen. The Romans and Greeks called me the dreamgod. I have gone into the most distinguished houses, and go yet. I know how to get along with the small as well as the great. Now you can tell!" And the Sandman went away and took his umbrella along.

"Now one won't dare to tell his opinion any longer at all, I suppose," grumbled the picture.

Then Frederick awoke. —*Ibid.*

83.

The Little Match-seller.

It was terribly cold and nearly dark on the last evening of the old year, and the snow was falling fast. In the cold and

the darkness, a poor little girl, with bare head and naked feet, roamed through the streets. It is true she had on a pair of slippers when she left home, but they were not of much use. They were very large, so large, indeed, that they had belonged to her mother, and the poor little creature had lost them in running across the street to avoid two carriages that were rolling along at a terrible rate. One of the slippers she could not find, and a boy seized upon the other and ran away with it, saying that he could use it as a cradle, when he had children of his own. So the little girl went on with her little naked feet, which were quite red and blue with the cold. In an old apron she carried a number of matches, and had a bundle of them in her hands. No one had bought anything of her the whole day, nor had any one given her even a penny. Shivering with cold and hunger, she crept along; poor little child, she looked the picture of misery. The snow-flakes fell on her long, fair hair, which hung in curls on her shoulders, but she regarded them not.

Lights were shining from every window, and there was a savoury smell of roast goose, for it was New-year's eve—yes, she remembered that. In a corner, between two houses, one of which projected beyond the other, she sank down, and huddled herself together. She had drawn her little feet under her, but she could not keep off the cold; and she dared not go home, for she had sold no matches, and could not take home even a penny of money. Her father would certainly beat her; besides, it was almost as cold at home as here, for they had only the roof to cover them, and the wind howled through the windows, although the largest holes had been stopped up with straw and rags. Her little hands were almost frozen with the cold. Ah! perhaps a burning match might be some good, if she could draw it from the bundle and strike it against the wall, just to warm her fingers. She drew one out—"scratch!"

how it sputtered as it burnt! It gave a warm, bright light, like a little candle, as she held her hand over it. It was really a wonderful light. It seemed to the little girl as if she were sitting by a large iron stove, with polished brass feet and a brass ornament. How the fire burned! and seemed so beautifully warm that the child stretched out her feet as if to warm them, when, lo! the flame of the match went out, the stove vanished, and she had only the remains of the half-burnt match in her hand.

She struck another match on the wall. It burst into a flame, and where its light fell upon the wall it became as transparent as a veil, and she could see into the room. The table was covered with a snowy white table-cloth, on which stood a splendid dinner service, and a steaming roast goose, stuffed with apples and dried plums. And what was still more wonderful, the goose jumped down from the dish and waddled across the floor, with a knife and fork in its breast, to the little girl. Then the match went out, and there remained nothing but the thick, damp, cold wall before her.

She lighted another match, and then she found herself sitting under a beautiful Christmas-tree. It was larger and more beautifully decorated than the one she had seen through the glass door at the rich merchant's. Thousands of tapers were burning upon the green branches, and coloured pictures, like those she had seen in the show-windows, looked down upon it all. The little one stretched out her hand towards them, and the match went out.

The Christmas lights rose higher and higher, till they looked to her like the stars in the sky. Then she saw a star fall, leaving behind a bright streak of fire. "Some one is dying," thought the little girl, for her old grandmother, the only one who had ever loved her, and who was now dead, had told her that when a star falls, a soul was going up to God.

She again rubbed a match on the wall, and the light shone round her; in the brightness stood her old grandmother, clear and shining, yet mild and loving in her appearance. "Grandmother," cried the little one, "O take me with you; I know you will go away when the match burns out; you will vanish like the warm stove, the roast goose, and the large, glorious Christmas-tree." And she made haste to light the whole bundle of matches, for she wished to keep her grandmother there. And the matches glowed with a light that was brighter than the noon-day, and her grandmother had never appeared so large or so beautiful. She took the little girl in her arms, and they both flew upwards in brightness and joy far above the earth, where there was neither cold nor hunger nor pain, for they were with God.

In the dawn of the morning there lay the poor little one, with pale cheeks and smiling mouth, leaning against the wall; she had been frozen to death on the last evening of the old year; and the New-year's sun rose and shone upon a little corpse! The child still sat, in the stiffness of death, holding the matches in her hand, one bundle of which was burnt. "She tried to warm herself," said some. No one imagined what beautiful things she had seen, nor into what glory she had entered with her grandmother on New-year's day.

—*Andersen.*

84.

The Three Sons of Fortune.

A father once called his three sons before him, and he gave to the first a cock, to the second a scythe, and to the third a cat. "I am already aged," said he, "and my death is nigh, and I have wished to take thought for you before my end; money I have not, and what I have now given you seems of little worth, but all that is wanted is that you should turn it to

account with good sense. Only seek out a country where such things are still unknown and your fortune is made."

After the father's death the eldest went out with his cock, but wherever he came the cock was already known; in the towns he saw him from a long distance off sitting upon the steeples and turning round with the wind, and in the villages he heard more than one crow; no one would show any wonder at the creature, so that it did not look as if he would make his fortune by it.

At last, however, it happened that he came to an island where the people knew nothing about cocks, and did not even understand how to divide their time. They certainly knew when it was morning or evening, but at night, if they did not sleep through it, not one of them knew how to find out the time.

"Look!" said he, "what a proud creature! it has a ruby red crown upon its head, and wears spurs like a knight; it calls you at night three times at fixed hours, and when it calls for the last time the sun soon rises. But if it crows by broad daylight, then take notice, for there will certainly be a change of weather."

The people were well pleased; for a whole night they did not sleep, and listened with great delight as the cock at two, four, and six o'clock loudly and clearly proclaimed the time. They asked if the creature were not for sale, and how much he wanted for it. "As much gold as an ass can carry," answered he. "A mere trifle for such a precious creature!" they cried out together, and willingly gave him what he had asked.

When he came home with his wealth his brothers were astonished, and the second said, "Well, I will go out and see whether I cannot get rid of my scythe as nicely." But it did not look as if he would, for labourers met him everywhere, and they had scythes upon their shoulders as well as he.

At last, however, he chanced upon an island where the people knew nothing of scythes. When the corn was ripe there they took cannons out to the fields and shot it down. Now this was rather an uncertain affair; many shot right over it, others hit the ears instead of the stems, and shot them away, whereby much was lost, and besides all this there was a terrible noise. So the man set to work and mowed it down so quietly and quickly that the people opened their mouths with astonishment. They agreed to give him what he wanted for the scythe, and he received a horse laden with as much gold as it could carry.

Now the third brother wanted to find out the proper person to buy his cat. It happened to him as to the others; so long as he stayed on the mainland there was nothing to be done. Every place had cats, and there were so many of them that new-born kittens were generally drowned in the ponds.

At last he sailed over to an island, and it happened luckily that cats were quite unknown there, and at the same time the mice had got the upper hand so much that they danced upon the tables and seats whether the master were at home or not. The people complained bitterly of the plague; the King himself in his palace did not know what to do; mice squeaked in every corner and gnawed whatever they could lay hold of with their teeth. But now the cat began her chase and had soon cleared a couple of rooms, and the people begged the the King to buy the wonderful beast for the country. The King willingly gave what was asked, which was a mule laden with gold, and the third brother came home with the greatest treasure of all.

The cat made herself merry with the mice in the royal palace, and killed so many that they could not be counted. At last she got hot with the work and became thirsty, so she stood still, lifted up her head and cried, "Miou! miou!" The King and all his people when they heard this strange cry were

frightened, and in their terror ran all at once out of the palace. There the King took counsel what was best to be done; at last it was determined to send a herald to the cat and demand that she should leave the palace, or if not to expect that force would be used against her. The councillors said, "Sooner will we let ourselves be plagued with the mice, than give up our lives to such a monster as this." A noble youth, therefore, was sent to ask the cat "whether she would peaceably quit the castle." But the cat, whose thirst had become still greater, merely answered, "Miou! miou!" The youth understood her to say "No, no!" and took this answer to the King. "Now," said the councillors, "she must give way to force." Cannon were brought out, and the palace was soon in flames. When the fire reached the room where the cat was sitting, she sprang safely out of the window; but the besiegers did not leave off until the whole palace was shot away down to the ground.

—*Grimm.*

85.

Rumpelstiltskin.

Once there was a miller who was poor, but who had a beautiful daughter. Now it happened that he had to go and speak to the King, and in order to make himself appear important he said to him, "I have a daughter who can spin straw into gold." The King said to the miller, "That is an art which pleases me well; if your daughter is as clever as you say, bring her to-morrow to my palace and I will try what she can do."

Now when the girl was brought to him he took her into a room which was quite full of straw, gave her a spinning-wheel and a reel, and said, "Now set to work, and if by to-morrow morning early you have not spun this straw into gold during the night, you must die." Thereupon he himself shut up the

room and left her in it alone. So there sat the poor miller's daughter, and could not tell what to do for her life; she had no idea how straw could be spun into gold, and she grew more and more miserable, until at last she began to weep.

But all at once the door opened, and in came a little man, and said, "Good evening, Miss Miller; why are you crying so?" "Alas," answered the girl, "I have to spin straw into gold, and I do not know how to do it." "What will you give me," said the manikin, "if I do it for you?" "My necklace," said the girl. The little man took the necklace, set himself down in front of the wheel, and whirr, whirr, whirr, three turns, and the reel was full; then he put another on, and whirr, whirr, whirr, three times round and the second was full too. And so it went on until the morning, when all the straw was spun, and all the reels were full of gold. By daybreak the King was already there, and when he saw the gold he was astonished and delighted, but his heart became only more greedy. He had the miller's daughter taken into another room full of straw, which was much larger, and commanded her to spin that also in one night if she valued her life. The girl knew not how to help herself, and was crying when the door again opened, and the little man appeared, and said, "What will you give me if I spin the straw into gold for you?" "The ring on my finger," answered the girl. The little man took the ring, again began to wind the wheel, and by morning had spun all the straw into glittering gold.

The King rejoiced beyond measure at the sight, but still he had not gold enough; and he had the miller's daughter taken into a still larger room full of straw, and said, "You must spin this, too, in the course of this night; but if you succeed you shall be my wife." "Even if she be a miller's daughter," thought he, "I could not find a richer woman in the whole world."

When the girl was alone the manikin came again for the

third time, and said, "What will you give me if I spin the straw for you this time also?" "I have nothing left that I could give," answered the girl. "Then promise me, if you should become Queen, your first child." "Who knows whether that will ever happen?" thought the miller's daughter; and not knowing how else to help herself in this strait, she promised the manikin what he wanted, and for that he once more spun the straw into gold.

And when the King came in the morning, and found all as he had wished, he took her in marriage, and the pretty miller's daughter became a Queen.

A year after she had a beautiful child, and she never gave a thought to the manikin. But suddenly he came into her room, and said, "Now give me what you promised." The Queen was horror-struck, and offered the manikin all the riches of the kingdom if he would leave the child. But the manikin said, "No, anything living is dearer to me than all the treasures in the world." Then the Queen began to weep and cry, so that the manikin pitied her. "I will give you time for three days," said he; "if before then you find out my name then shall you keep your child."

So the Queen thought the whole night over all the names that she had ever heard, and she sent a messenger over the country to inquire, far and wide, for any other names that there might be. When the manikin came the next day, she began with Caspar, Melchior, Belthazar, and said all the names she knew, one after another; but to every one the little man said, "That is not my name." On the second day she had inquiries made in the neighbourhood as to the names of the people there, and she repeated to the manikin the most uncommon and curious. "Perhaps your name is Shortribs, or Sheepshanks, or Laceleg?" but he always answered, "That is not my name."

On the third day the messenger came back again, and said,

"I have not been able to find a single new name, but as I came to a high mountain round the end of the forest, where fox and hare bid each other good night, there I saw a little house, and before the house a fire was burning, and round about the fire quite a ridiculous little man was jumping: he hopped upon one leg, and shouted—

"'To-day I bake, to-morrow brew,
The next I'll have the young Queen's child.
Ha! glad am I that no one knew
That Rumpelstiltskin I am styled.'"

You may think how glad the Queen was when she heard the name. And when soon afterwards the little man came in, and asked, "Now, Madam, Queen, what is my name?" at first she said, "Is your name Conrad?" "No." "Is your name Harry?" "No."

"Perhaps your name is Rumpelstiltskin?"

"A witch has told you that! a witch has told you that!" cried the little man, and in his anger he stamped with the right foot so hard on the ground that his whole leg went in; and then in rage he pulled at his left leg so hard with both hands that he tore himself in two.

—*Grimm.*

86.

The Brave Tin Soldier.

There were once five-and-twenty tin soldiers, who were all brothers, for they had been made out of the same old tin spoon. They shouldered arms and looked straight before them, and wore a splendid uniform, red and blue. The first thing in the world they ever heard were the words, "Tin soldiers!" uttered by a little boy, who clapped his hands with delight when the lid of the box, in which they lay, was taken off. They were given him for a birthday present, and he

stood at the table to set them up. The soldiers were all exactly alike, excepting one, who had only one leg; he had been left to the last, and then there was not enough of the melted tin to finish him, so they made him to stand firmly on one leg, and this caused him to be very remarkable.

The table on which the tin soldiers stood was covered with other playthings, but the most attractive to the eye was a pretty little paper castle. Through the small windows the rooms could be seen. In front of the castle a number of little trees surrounded a piece of looking-glass, which was intended to represent a transparent lake. Swans, made of wax, swam on the lake, and were reflected in it. All this was very pretty, but the prettiest of all was a tiny little lady, who stood at the open door of the castle; she, also, was made of paper, and she wore a dress of clear muslin, with a narrow blue ribbon over her shoulders just like a scarf. In front of this was fixed a glittering star, as large as her whole face. The little lady was a dancer, and she stretched out both her arms, and raised one of her legs so high that the tin soldier could not see it at all, and he thought that she, like himself, had only one leg. "That is the wife for me," he thought; "but she is too grand, and lives in a castle, while I have only a box to live in, five-and-twenty of us altogether; that is no place for her. Still I must try and make her acquaintance." Then he laid himself at full length on the table behind a snuff-box that stood upon it, so that he could peep at the little delicate lady, who continued to stand on one leg without losing her balance. When evening came, the other tin soldiers were all placed in the box, and the people of the house went to bed. Then the playthings began to have their own games together, to pay visits, to have sham fights, and give balls. The tin soldiers rattled in their box; they wanted to get out and join the amusements, but they could not open the lid. The nut-crackers played at leap-frog, and

the pencil jumped about the table. There was such a noise that the canary woke up and began to talk, and in poetry too. Only the tin soldier and the dancer remained in their places. She stood on tiptoe, with her arms stretched out, as firmly as he did on his one leg. He never took his eyes from her for even a moment. The clock struck twelve, and, with a bounce, up sprang the lid of the snuff-box; but, instead of snuff, there jumped up a little black goblin; for the snuff-box was a toy puzzle.

"Tin soldier," said the goblin, "don't wish for what does not belong to you."

But the tin soldier pretended not to hear.

"Very well; wait till to-morrow, then," said the goblin.

When the children came in the next morning, they placed the tin soldier in the window. Now, whether it was the goblin who did it, or the draught, is not known, but the window flew open, and out fell the tin soldier, heels over head, from the third storey, into the street beneath. It was a terrible fall; for he came head downwards, his helmet and his bayonet stuck in between the flag-stones, and his one leg up in the air. The servant-maid and the little boy went downstairs directly to look for him; but he was nowhere to be seen, although once they nearly trod upon him. If he had called out, "Here I am," it would have been all right; but he was too proud to cry out for help while he wore a uniform.

Presently it began to rain, and the drops fell faster and faster, till there was a heavy shower. When it was over, two boys happened to pass by, and one of them said, "Look, there is a tin soldier. He ought to have a boat to sail in."

So they made a boat out of a newspaper, and placed the tin soldier in it, and sent him sailing down the gutter, while the two boys ran by the side of it, and clapped their hands. Good gracious, what large waves arose in that gutter! and how fast

the stream rolled on! for the rain had been very heavy. The paper boat rocked up and down, and turned itself round sometimes so quickly that the tin soldier trembled; yet he remained firm; his countenance did not change; he looked straight before him, and shouldered his musket. Suddenly the boat shot under a bridge which formed part of a drain, and then it was as dark as the tin soldier's box.

"Where am I going now?" thought he. "This is the black goblin's fault, I am sure. Ah, well, if the little lady were only here with me in the boat, I should not care for any darkness."

Suddenly there appeared a great water-rat, who lived in the drain.

"Have you a passport?" asked the rat, "give it to me at once." But the tin soldier remained silent and held his musket tighter than ever. The boat sailed on and the rat followed it. How he did gnash his teeth and cry out to the bits of wood and straw. "Stop him, stop him; he has not paid toll, and has not shown his pass." But the stream rushed on stronger and stronger. The tin soldier could already see daylight shining where the arch ended. Then he heard a roaring sound quite terrible enough to frighten the bravest man. At the end of the tunnel the drain fell into a large canal over a steep place, which made it as dangerous for him as a waterfall would be to us. He was too close to it to stop, so the boat rushed on, and the poor tin soldier could only hold himself as stiffly as possible, without moving an eyelid, to show that he was not afraid. The boat whirled round three or four times, and then filled with water to the very edge; nothing could save it from sinking. He now stood up to his neck in water, while deeper and deeper sank the boat, and the paper became soft and loose with the wet, till at last the water closed over the

soldier's head. He thought of the elegant little dancer whom he should never see again, and the words of the song sounded in his ears—

"Farewell warrior! ever brave,
Drifting onward to thy grave."

Then the paper boat fell to pieces, and the soldier sank into the water and immediately afterwards was swallowed up by a great fish. Oh how dark it was inside the fish! a great deal darker than in the tunnel, and narrower, too, but the tin soldier continued firm, and lay at full length, shouldering his musket. The fish swam to and fro, making the most wonderful movements, but at last he became quite still. After a while, a flash of lightning seemed to pass through him, and then the daylight appeared, and a voice cried out, "I declare! here is the tin soldier." The fish had been caught, taken to the market and sold to the cook, who took him into the kitchen and cut him open with a large knife. She picked up the soldier and held him by the waist between her finger and thumb, and carried him into the room. They were all anxious to see this wonderful soldier who had travelled about inside a fish; but he was not at all proud. They placed him on the table, and—how many curious things do happen in the world!—there he was in the very same room from the window of which he had fallen, there were the same children, the same playthings standing on the table, and the pretty castle with the elegant little dancer at the door; she still balanced herself on one leg, and held up the other, so she was as firm as himself. It touched the tin soldier so much to see her that he almost wept tin tears, but he kept them back. He only looked at her, and they both remained silent. Presently one of the little boys took up the tin soldier, and threw him into the stove. He had no reason for doing so, therefore it must have been the fault of the black goblin who lived in the snuff-box. The flames lighted up the tin soldier,

as he stood, the heat was very terrible, but whether it proceeded from the real fire or from the fire of love he could not tell. Then he could see that the bright colours were faded from his uniform, but whether they had been washed off during his journey, or from the effects of his sorrow, no one could say. He looked at the little lady, and she looked at him. He felt himself melting away, but he still remained firm with his gun on his shoulder. Suddenly the door of the room flew open, and the draught of air caught up the little dancer, she fluttered like a sylph right into the stove by the side of the tin soldier, and was instantly in flames and was gone. The tin soldier melted down into a lump, and the next morning, when the maidservant took the ashes out of the stove, she found him in the shape of a little tin heart. But of the little dancer nothing remained but the star, which was burnt black as a cinder.

VOCABULARY.

VOCABULARY.

References in figures are to the exercises.

The declensions of the nouns are indicated as follows :

f means *weak* feminine, *sf. strong* feminine which all have *umlaut* and *e* in nom. plur., excepting **Mutter** and **Tochter**.

sm. indicates masculines with *e* in nom. plu., but *no umlaut*, *sm.** masculines with both *e* and *umlaut* in the plur. In both these cases the student knows that nouns in *el*, *em*, *en*, *er*, are *without* endings in the plural and therefore will not be misled by the signs. *sm.*(er) indicates those masculines which have the ending *er* in the plural. As they umlaut whenever possible, there was no need of indicating its presence. *wm.* stands for *weak* masculine.

sn. indicates *strong* neuters with the ending *e* in the plural. *Umlaut* is indicated wherever it occurs ; *sn.*(er) has the same force as in the corresponding masculines.

The masculines and neuters of the *mixed declension* are designated *mm.* and *mn.* respectively, but without distinction of the subdivisions which the student is to get from the grammar.

A.

a, an, ein ; **not —**, kein ; (*a certain*) ein gewisser, (*price*) der.

aboard, an Bord ; **all —**, einsteigen.

able, fähig, im Stande sein ; **be —**, können.

about, *prep.* um, über, an (82), *adv.*, umher, herum, (*nearly*) ungefähr ; **— to**, im Begriffe.

above, *adv.*, oben, nach oben ; *prep.* über ; **— all things**, vor allen Dingen.

absent, abwesend.

accent, Betonung, *f.* ; *v.* betonen.

accept, annehmen.

accident, Unglück, *sn.* (for *plur.* use Unglücksfälle), Unfall, *sm.*,* (*chance*) Zufall, *sm.** ; **due to —**, dem Zufall zu verdanken ; **by —**, zufällig, zufälligerweise, durch Zufall.

accord, of one's own, von selbst.

according (to), nach ; **— as**, je nachdem.

account, Rechnung, *f.* ; **on no —**, keineswegs ; **call to —**, zur Rechenschaft ziehen.

accusation, Anklage, *f.*

accuse, anklagen, beschuldigen (*g.*) ; (*impeach*) verklagen.

accustom, gewöhnen (an, *a*) ; **be —ed**, pflegen, gewohnt sein.

ache, schmerzen.

acquaint, bekannt machen ; **— ed**, bekannt ; **to be —ed with**, kennen ; **—ance**, Bekannte, *wm.* ; Bekanntschaft, *f.*

across, über, (*motion*) herüber, hinüber.

active, regsam, (*lively*) munter, (*busy*) thätig.

actually, wirklich.

adapted for, sich eignen zu, passend zu.

add, zulegen, hinzufügen.

addition, **in — to it**, noch dazu.

address, Adresse, *f.*; *v.* anreden; **make an —**, eine Rede halten.

admit, zugeben, gestehen.

ado, Lärm, *sm.*, Aufsehen, *sn.*; **without more —**, ohne weiteres, ohne Umstände.

adorn, schmücken.

advance, Fortschritt, *sm.*; **in —**, im voraus; (*of clocks*) zu früh gehen.

advance, *v.* vorrücken, Fortschritte machen.

advantage, Vortheil, *sm.*

adventure, Abenteuer, *sn.*

advice, Rath, *sm.* (*pl.* Räthe, councillors), Rathschlag, *sm.**

advise, rathen (*d.*).

affair, Sache, *f.*, Gelegenheit, *f.*

affirm, behaupten.

affirmative, **in the**, bejahend.

afraid, **to be**, sich fürchten (vor, *d.*)

after, *prep.* nach, hinter; *conj.* nachdem; *adv.* nachher, darauf; **— that**, nachdem; (*with verbs of longing, aiming at, etc.*), nach.

afternoon, Nachmittag, *sm.*, Nm.

afterwards, später, nachher; **soon —**, bald darauf.

again, wieder, nochmals, von neuem.

against, gegen.

age, Alter, *sn.*; **a good old —**, ein hohes Alter.

aged, alt.

ago, vor, her; **ten years —**, vor zehn Jahren; **long —**, lange her; **some time —**, schon langst.

agree, **— with**, (*health*) bekommen (*d.*); verabreden (21); **— to do**, sich bereit erklären zu thun (84).

agreement, Übereinstimmung, *f.*

ahead, im voraus, (*of clocks*) vorgehen, zu früh gehen.

aim, Ziel, *sn.*

air, Luft, *sf.*, (*appearance*) Schein, *sm.*, Aussehen, *sn.*, Miene, *f.*

alarm, erschrecken; **become —ed**, in Angst gerathen.

alas, leider.

all, all, (*whole*) ganz, sämmtlich, (*every*) all, jeder; **after —**, doch, wohl, jedoch; **at —**, (ganz und) gar; **— but**, fast; **it's — very well to say** (18), es lässt sich leicht sagen.

allow, (*permit*) erlauben (*d.*), (*be valid*) gelten lassen, (*let*) lassen; **be —ed**, dürfen.

almost, fast, beinahe.

alms, Almosen, *sn.*

alone, allein; **let —**, gut sein, in Ruhe lassen.

along, hin, her; *prep.* längs, (*with*) mit; *adv.* entlang.

aloud, laut.

already, schon, bereits.

alright, schön, nun gut; **now it is —**, nun ist es gut (13).

also, auch, gleichfalls.

Alster basin, Alsterbassin.

alter, ändern, verändern.

although, obgleich, wenn auch.

altogether, zusammen, (*wholly*) ganz und gar, im ganzen (8).

always, immer, stets.

A.M. Vormittags, Vm.

ambassador, der Gesandte (*part.* with *adj. inflection*).

amiss, verkehrt; **to take —**, übel nehmen, verdenken (*d.*).

among, unter, zwischen; **— other things**, unter anderem; **from —**, aus ....heraus.

ample, reichlich.

amuse, amüsiren, belustigen.

amusement, Unterhaltung, *f.*, Vergnügung, *f.*, Vergnügen, *sn.*

amusing, amüsant, unterhaltend.

ancient, alt; — **head** (82), Urhaupt, *sn.*(er).

and, und.

anecdote, Anecdote, *f*

angel, Engel, *sm.*

anger, Zorn, *sm.* Ärger, *sm.*; **in** —, zornig.

angry, zornig (über, *a.*), (*vexed*) ärgerlich; **get** —, sich ärgern (über, *a.*).

ankle, Knöchel, *sm.*

annoyed, ärgerlich; **get** —, ärgerlich werden, sich ärgern (über, *a.*)

another, ein andrer.

answer, Antwort, *f.*; **in** — **to**, darauf; **make** — **to**, Antwort geben auf, (*a.*).

answer, *v.* antworten (*d. pers.*; auf *a.*, *thing*), erwidern (*d.*), (*letters, questions*), beantworten (*a.*), antworten, (auf, *a.*); — **to**, entsprechen (*d.*).

ant, Ameise, *f.*

antidote, Gegengift, *sn.*

anxious, ängstlich, bange, besorgt, (*desirous*) begierig.

any, ein, irgend ein, etwas, welche; **not** —, kein; (*partitive w. noun*) *untranslated*; **at** — **rate**, jedenfalls; —**way**, irgendwie; —**more**, noch mehr; **under** — **circumstances**, auf alle Fälle.

anyone, jemand; **not** —, niemand.

anything, (irgend) etwas; — **else**, sonst etwas, noch etwas.

apiece, das Stück (1).

appear, (*put in an appearance*) erscheinen, (*seem*) scheinen, vorkommen, (*arrive*) eintreffen.

appearance, Schein, *sm.*, (*looks*) Aussehen, *sn.*, Ansehen, *sn.*

apple, Apfel, *sm.*

apply (**to**), sich wenden (an, *a.*), anlegen, auflegen; — **one's self to**, sich beschäftigen (mit), sich widmen (*d.*); — **for**, bewerben (um).

appoint, (*fix time*) festsetzen, bestimmen, (*nominate*) ernennen.

appointment (30), Ernennung (zu der Stelle).

appreciate, schätzen.

approach, nahen, (sich) nähern.

apron, Schürze, *f.*

arch, Bogen, *sm.*(*)

aright, recht.

arise, (*revolt, spring up*) sich erheben, (*get up*) aufstehen, (*ascend*) aufsteigen.

aristocratic, vornehm.

arithmetic, Rechnen, *sn.*

arm, Arm, *sm.*; — **s** (86), Gewehr, *sn.*: **shoulder** —, Gewehr schultern.

army, Heer, *sn.*, Armee, *f.*

around, um (.... herum), umher, in der Nähe.

arrangement, Einrichtung, *f.*

arrival, Ankunft, *sf.*

arrive, ankommen (in, *a.*).

art, Kunst, *sf.*

artist, Künstler, *sm.*

as, als, wie; **so** — (**to**), um ...; — **well**, auch; — **well** —, sowohl als, sogut wie; — **soon** —, sobald als; — **if**, als ob, als wenn; — ... —, so .... als; (*since*) da; (*while*) indem; — **yet**, noch.

ascend, (hinauf) steigen, *tr.* besteigen.

ashamed, beschämt, verschämt; **be** —, sich schämen (*gen.* or über, *a.*).

ashes, Asche, *f.*

Asia, Asien, *n.*

aside, ab, bei Seite.

ask, fragen, (*request, beg*) bitten (um), (*demand*) fordern, verlangen; — **a question**, eine Frage stellen; — **for a person**, fragen (nach).

asleep, eingeschlafen; **fall** —, einschlafen.

ass, Esel, *sm.*

assembly, Versammlung, *f.*

assent, billigen (*a.*), zustimmen.

assert, behaupten.

assist, helfen, beistehen (*d.*).

assistance, Hulfe, *f.*, Beistand, *sm.*

assume, annehmen; — **courage** (77), Muth fassen.

assure, versichern, (*d.*).

assuredly, gewiss, bestimmt: **most** —, ganz bestimmt.

astonish, verwundern, in Erstaunen setzen; **be** —**ed**, erstaunen (über, *a.*).

astonishment, Erstaunen, *sn.*, Verwunderung, *f.*; **in** —, erstaunt.

at, an (81); — **Toronto**, in T.; — **noon**, zu Mittag; — **my house**, bei mir; — **4 o'clock**, um 4 Uhr; (with verbs, nouns and adjs. expressing *joy*, *surprise*, *shame*) über (*a.*); (with verbs of *aim*) nach; (with others such as *play* and *look*) untranslated.

attack, Angriff, *sm.*, Anfall, *sm.*,* (*of a fortress*) Ersturmung, *f.*

attack, *v.* angreifen.

attempt, Versuch, *sm.*

attempt, *v.* versuchen, probiren.

attend, (*school*) besuchen, (*be present at*) beiwohnen (*d.*), (*treat*) behandeln; auf der Universität studiren (18).

attention, Aufmerksamkeit, *f.*

attentive, aufmerksam.

attract, anziehen; —**ive**, anziehend.

aunt, Tante, *f.*

Austria, Österreich.

author, Verfasser, *sm.*

autumn, Herbst, *sm.*

avail one's self of, benutzen.

avenge, rächen.

avoid, vermeiden.

awake, *adj.*, wach; *v. tr.* wecken, aufwecken, *intr.* aufwachen, *fig.* erwachen.

away, weg, fort, (*absent*) abwesend.

awkward, linkisch, ungeschickt; —**ness**, Ungeschicklichkeit, *f.*

axe, Axt, *sf.*

B.

back, Rücken, *sm.*

back, zurück; — **and forth**, hin und her; (*returned*) zurückgekehrt.

bad, schlecht, böse, (*harmful*, *unfortunate*) übel, schlimm; **too** —, schade.

baggage, Gepäck, *sn.*

bake, backen.

balance, im Gleichgewicht halten, balanziren; *n.* Gleichgewicht, *sn.*

ball, Ball, *sm.*,* (of *guns*, *etc.*) Kugel, *f.*

bare, nackt, bloss; — **foot**, barfuss.

bargain, Handel, *sm.*,* Vertrag, *sm.**

bark, bellen; — **at**, anbellen.

barley, Gerste, *f.*

barracks, Kaserne, *f.*

basket, Korb, *sm.**

bat, Fledermaus, *sf.*

bath, Bad, *sn.*(er).

battle, Schlacht, *f.*, Kampf, *sm.**

bayonet, Bajonet, *sn.*(te).

be, sein, (*become*) werden, (*indefinite existence*, Fr. *il y a*) gehen, (*remain*) bleiben; **I am to**, ich soll; **how are you?** wie geht's Ihnen, wie befinden Sie sich? **that is** (*means*), das heisst; (*run*) lauten; **as it were**, wie es schien.

beaming, strahlend (28).

bean, Bohne, *f.*

bear, Bär, *wm.*

bear, tragen, (*suffer*) ertragen, (*endure*) aushalten; — **up under**, bekämpfen; — **a child**, gebären.

beard, Bart, *sm.**

beast, Thier, *sn.*

beat, schlagen.

beautiful, schön, hübsch, (*grand*) herrlich, prächtig.

beauty, Schönheit.

because, da, weil; — **of**, wegen.

beckon, winken.

become, werden, (*change into*) zu

....werden, (*suit*) passen, gut stehen (*d.*), (*propriety*) gebühren, sich schicken für.....

bed, Bett, *nn.*; — **room**, Schlafzimmer, *sn.*; **put to** —, zu Bett bringen; **go to** —, zu Bett gehen.

before, *prep.*, vor; *adv.* (*place*) vorn, (*motion*) voran, (*time*) vorher, früher, eher, schon; *conj.*, ehe, bevor.

beg, betteln (um), erbetteln, (*request*) bitten (um), erbitten (*a.*); — **pardon**, um Verzeihung bitten.

beggar, Bettler, *sm.*

begin, anfangen, beginnen.

behind, *adv.* hinten, zurück, nach hinten; *prep.* hinter; **from** —, hinter ....hervor.

behold, sehen.

belief, Glaube, *mm.*

believe, glauben (*d.* of *pers.*; in, an, *a.*).

bell, Schelle, *f.*, Glocke, *f.*

belong, gehören (*d.* of *pers.*, zu, *to a thing*).

below, *adv.* unten, nach unten, hinunter; *prep.* unter.

beneath, see **below**.

bend, biegen, beugen.

benefit, Vortheil, *sm.*, Wohl, *sn.*; **confer** — **on**, helfen, nutzen (*d.*).

berry, Beere, *f.*: **straw** —, Erdbeere.

beseech, ersuchen, erflehen.

beside, neben, (*over and above*) ausser.

besides, ausserdem, überdies.

besiege, belagern.

besieger, Belagerer, *sm.*

best, see **good**; **made the** — **of their way**, eilten so viel wie möglich (78); **do the** — **one can**, Alles mögliche thun.

betray, verrathen (*d.*).

between, zwischen.

beyond, weiter; — **measure**, über die Massen.

Bible, Bibel, *f.*

bicycle, Zweirad, *sn.*(er).

bid, befehlen, (*offer*) bieten, (*invite*) einladen; — **goodnight**, gute Nacht sagen.

big, gross; — **boned**, starkknochig.

bill, (*bird*) Schnabel, *sm.*,* (*account*) Rechnung, *f.*, (*money*) Schein, *sm.*, Banknote, *f.*; **to put in the** —, auf die Rechnung setzen.

bind, binden (an, *a.*).

bird, Vogel, *sm.**

birth, Geburt, *f.*; — **day**, Geburtstag, *sm.*; — **day present**, Geburtstagsgeschenk, *sn.*

bishop, Bischof, *sm.**

bit, (*small piece*) Stück, *sn.*; **a little** —, ein bischen, ein klein wenig; **the least** —, das Geringste.

bite, beissen.

bitterly, bitterlich.

black, schwarz: — **board**, Schultafel, *f.*, Schwarzbrett, *sn.*(er); **Black forest**, Schwarzwald, *sm.*(er).

blame, tadeln; **I am to** —, ich bin daran schuld.

bless, segnen; — **ing**, Segen, *sm.*

blossom, Blüthe, *f.*

blossom, *r.* blühen.

blow, blasen, pusten.

blue, blau.

board, Brett, *sn.*(er); **on** — **ship**, an Bord eines Schiffes; *r.* entern.

boarding school, — **place**, Pension, *f.*

boast, sich rühmen (*g.*), prahlen.

boat, Boot, *sn.*( ), Kahn, *sm.*, Nachen, *sm.*

boil, kochen, sieden.

bold, (*brave*) tapfer, kühn, (*not afraid, impudent*) keck, dreist; **brave and** —, kühn und mutig.

book, Buch, *sn.*(er); — **of travel**, Reisebuch; —**seller**, Buchhändler, *sm.*

boot, (top), Stiefel, *sm.*

borrow, borgen.

both, beide; — .... **and**, sowohl .... als auch.

bottle, Flasche, *f.*

bounce, Sprung, *sm.**

bound (tor), dahin reisen (22); nach.... bestimmt (78).

bow, (*salute*) Verbeugung, *f.*

bow, *v.* sich verbeugen.

box, Kiste, *f.*, Kasten, *sm.*; — **on the ears**, Ohrfeige, *f.*

boy, Knabe, *wm.*, (*young one*) Junge, *wm.*, Freund, *sm.*, (*errand boy*) Bursche, *wm.*

boyish, knabenhaft, jugendlich.

bracelet, Armband, *sn.*(er).

brain, (*sense*) Verstand, *sm.*; —s, Gehirn, *sn.*

branch, Ast, *sm.*,* Zweig, *sm.*

brandy, Branntwein, *sm.*, Cognac.

brass, Messing, *sn.*

brave, tapfer, (*good*) brav.

bray, yanen, schreien.

breach, Bruch, *sm.**

bread, Brot, *sn.*; — **and butter**, Butterbrot.

break, brechen, zerbrechen.

breakfast, Frühstück, *sn.*

breakfast, *v.* frühstücken.

breast, Brust, *sf.*

breath, Athem, *sm.*; **out of** —, ausser Athem.

brew, brauen.

brick, Backstein, *sm.*

bridge, Brücke, *f.*

bright, hell, (*shining*) glänzend, klar, (*cheerful*) munter, heiter, (*clever*) klug; — **colored**, bunt; — **eyed**, helläugig.

brightness, Glanz, *sm.*, Heiterkeit, *f.*, Klugheit, *f.*

bring, bringen, mitbringen, (*fetch*) holen; — **up**, (*educate*) erziehen.

broad, breit; **by — day**, am hellem Tage.

brooch, Brosche, *f.*

brook, Bach, *sm.**

brother, Bruder, *sm.**

brown, braun.

brush, bürsten; — **up**, aufputzen.

build, bauen; —**ing**, Gebäude, *sn.*

bullet, Kugel, *f.*

bundle, Bündel, *sn.*, (*matches*) Bund, *sn.*

bundle, *v.* packen.

burden, Last, *f.*, Bürde, *f.*

burglar, Dieb, *sm.*, Spitzbube, *wm.*, Einbrecher, *sm.*

burn, brennen.

burst, bersten, platzen; **to just — with raisins**, vor lauter Rosinen platzen (81); — **from**, sich losreissen (77); — **into flame**, aufflammen.

busied, beschäftigt.

business, Geschäft, *sn.*, Beschäftigung, *f.*; — **man**, Geschäftsmann, *sm.* (er); **have — on hand**, etwas vorhaben (27); **a fine piece of** —, eine schöne Geschichte.

bustle, Lärm, *sm.*

but, *conj.* aber, *after a negative* (*adversative*) sondern, (*supplementing*) allein, (*only*) nur, (*except*) ausser; **nothing** —, nichts als; **cannot** —, nicht umhin können.

butter, Butter, *f.*

buy, kaufen; — **from**, abkaufen.

by, *prep.* (*near*) bei, (*alongside*) an, (*beside*) neben, (*agent*) von, durch, (*by means of*) durch, (*according to*) nach, (*measure*) um, (*weight*) nach, (*past*) an, an ... vorbei, vorüber; — **day**, am Tage; — **night**, bei Nacht, with verbs expressing action of the *senses*, an, (*reason*) aus, — *adv.* dabei, daneben, (*past*) vorbei, vorüber; — **and** —, nach und nach, allmählig.

C.

cab, Droschke, *f.*

cabin, (*vessel*) Kajüte, *f.*, (*hut*) Hütte, *f.*

cake, Kuchen, *sm.*

call, (*name*) nennen, heissen; **be —ed**, heissen; **—ed**, Namens, mit Namen, genannt, (*cry*), rufen, ausrufen (nach); **— on**, (*visit*) besuchen, aufsuchen; **— for** (*a person*), abholen, (*order*) gebieten; **— in**, vorsprechen bei (15); **— in** (*a physician*), holen lassen; **— together**, zusammenrufen; **— upon**, auffordern, anrufen.

calling, Beruf, *sm.*

calmly, ruhig, gelassen.

camp, Lager, *sn.*

can, können.

canal, Kanal, *sm.**

canary, Kanarienvogel, *sm.**

candidate, Kandidat, *mm.*

candle, Licht, *sn.*(er).

cannon, Kanone, *f.*

capable, fähig (zu).

capacity, (*ability*) Fähigkeit, *f.*

capital, *adj.* vorzüglich; *n.*, (*letter*) grosser Buchstabe, *mm.*

car, Wagen, *sm.*(*)

cardinal, Kardinal, *sm.**

care, Sorge, *f.*, (*heed*) Sorgfalt, *f.*

care, *v.* (*see to*, — *for*), sorgen für, (*nurse*) pflegen, (*be cautious*) vorsichtig sein, (*be anxious about*) sich kümmern (um), (*guard against*) sich hüten (vor, *d.*), sich in Acht nehmen, (*of things*) aufbewahren, (*like*) *used mostly negatively*, fragen (nach), Gefallen finden (an, *d.*); **for all I —**, meinetwegen.

careful, (*cautious*) vorsichtig, (*heedful*) sorgfältig, (*clever*) geschickt.

careless, nachlässig; **—ness**, Nachlässigkeit, *f.*

cargo, Fracht, *f.*, Ladung, *f.*

carpet, Teppich, *sm.*

carriage, Wagen, *sm.*(*)

carry, tragen; **— on**, (*occupation*) treiben.

case, Fall, *sm.**; **in —**, falls.

cast, werfen; **— down**, (*in spirits*) niederschlagen; **— off**, verstossen (79).

castle, Schloss, *sn.*(er).

cat, Katze, *f.*

catch, fangen; **— up**, (*seize*) ergreifen.

cause, Ursache, *f.*, Grund, *sm.**

cause, *v.* veranlassen, verursachen; **—to be** (86), machen, (*order*) lassen.

caution, Vorsicht, *f.*

cautious, vorsichtig.

cave, Höhle, *f.*

cease, aufhören (mit), anhalten.

ceiling, Decke, *f.*

celebrate, feiern; **—d**, berühmt, (wegen).

centre, Mitte, *f.*, Mittelpunkt, *sm.**; **in the — of**, mitten in, im Innern.

century, Jahrhundert, *sn.*

ceremony, Feier, *f.* (in *plur.*, Feierlichkeit, *f.*), **without further —**, ohne Umstände, ohne weiteres.

certain, gewiss, sicher; **a —**, ein gewisser; **—ty**, Gewissheit, *f.*

certainly, ja, gewiss, wirklich, in der That.

certificate, Zeugniss, *sn.*

chair, Stuhl, *sm.**

challenge, Herausforderung, *f.*

chance, Zufall, *sm.**; **by -**, zufällig, (*opportunity*) Gelegenheit, *f.*, (*fortune*) Glück, *sn.*

chance, *v.* geschehen, aufstossen (*d.*).

change, Änderung, Veränderung, *f.*, Wechsel, *sm.*, (*money*) Kleingeld, *sn.*

change, *v.* (*alter*) ändern, verändern, (*transform*) verwandeln, (*exchange*) tauschen, (*money*) wechseln, (*clothes*) wechseln, umziehen, (*move*) ziehen

(nach), umziehen, (*countenance*) Miene verziehen.

chapel, Kapelle, *f.*

chapel, Kapitel, *sn.*

character, Character, *sm.*, (*in a play*) Rolle, *f.*; **principal** —, Hauptrolle, *f.*

charcoalburner, Kohlenbrenner, *sm.*

charge, (*entrust*) beauftragen, (*accuse*) anklagen.

charm, Reiz, *sm.*; —**ing**, reizend; —**ed**, entzückt (von, über, *a.*).

chase, Jagd, *f.* (nach, auf, *a.*).

chat, plaudern.

chattels, Sachen.

cheat, betrügen (um).

cheek, Backe, Wange, *f.*

cheer, Speise, *f.*; **be of good** —, guter Dinge sein.

cheerful, heiter, fröhlich, munter.

cheese, Käse, *sm.*

cherish, (*foster*) hegen.

chess, Schach, *sn.*

chicken, Hühnchen, Kuchlein, *sn.*

child, Kind, *sn.*(er); —**like**, kindlich; —**ish**, kindisch.

Chinese, *n.* Chinesen; *adj.* chinesisch.

choose, wählen, auswählen.

Christmas, Weihnachten, *f. plur.*; —**tree**, Weihnachtsbaum, *sm.**

church, Kirche, *f.*; —**door**, Kirchenthür, *f.*; — **elves**, Kirchenkobolde; —**tower**, Kirchenthurm, *sm.**

cigar, Cigarre, *f.*

cinder, Kohle, *f.*

circle, Kreis, *sm.*

circumstance, Umstand, *sm.**

citizen, Bürger, *sm.*, (*plur. collectively*) Bürgerschaft, *f.*

city, Stadt, *sf.*

claim, Anspruch, *sm.*,* Recht, *sn.*; **lay** — **to**, Anspruch machen auf (*a.*).

claim, *v.* beanspruchen, (*take*) nehmen.

clap, klatschen; — **hands, applaud**, in die Hände klatschen.

class, Klasse, *f.* (*society*), Stand, *sm.*,* (*race*) Geschlecht, *sn.*(er).

clean, rein, sauber, (*clear*) klar; —**liness**, Reinlichkeit, *f.*

clear, klar, (*bright*) hell, (*pure*) rein, (*distinct*) deutlich, (*transparent*) durchsichtig; —**ness**, Klarheit, *f.*

clear, *v.* (*empty*) leeren; — **out**, sich aus dem Staube machen.

clever, (*sharp*) klug, (*handy*) geschickt, gewandt.

cleverness, Klugheit, Geschicklichkeit, Gewandtheit, *f.*

cliff, Klippe, *f.*

climb, klettern, (*a mountain*) besteigen.

clock, Uhr, *f.*; **what o'**—, wie viel Uhr; **at 4 o'**—, um 4 Uhr.

close (*near*), nah, neben, an, bei, (*narrow*) eng, (*stingy*) sparsam, geizig, (*exact*) genau; — **behind**, dicht hinter.

close, *v.* zumachen, schliessen, beschliessen, (86) zusammenschlagen, -kommen.

clothe, kleiden, bekleiden; —**d in rags**, in Lumpen gehüllt.

clothes, Kleider; —**ing**, Kleidung, *f.*

coal, Kohle, *f.*

coast, Küste, *f.*

coat, Rock, *sm.**; — **of arms**, Wappen, *sn.*

cock, Hahn, *sm.**

coffee, Kaffee, *f.*; —**house**, Kaffeehaus, *sn.*(er).

coin, Münze, *f.*

cold, *adj.* kalt; *n.* Kälte, *f.*; **catch** —, sich erkälten; **be** —, frieren.

colleague, Kollege, *sm.*

collect, sammeln, (*take in, get*) einnehmen; — **one's self**, sich fassen, sich zusammennehmen (20).

collection, Sammlung, *f.*; — **plate**, Sammelteller, *sm.*

colloquial (*language*), Umgangssprache, *f.*

colour, Farbe, *f.*; — **ed pictures**, bunte Bilder.

come, kommen, (*arrive*) ankommen; —**about**, zustande kommen; — **and go**, aus- und ein-gehen.

comedy, Lustspiel, *sn.*

comfortable, bequem, behaglich.

comical, komisch.

command, befehlen, gebieten (*d.*); **have — of a language**, einer Sprache mächtig sein.

commence, anfangen, beginnen; —**ment**, Anfang, *sm.**

commission, Auftrag, *sm.*,* *v.* beauftragen.

commit, begehen.

common, gemein, (*general*) allgemein; **in —**, gemeinsam, gemeinschaftlich; (*usual*) gewöhnlich; — **sense**, gesunder Menschenverstand.

commons, the, die Gemeinen.

companion, Geselle (12), Gefährte, *wm.*

company, Gesellschaft, *f.*, (*escort*) Begleitung, *f.*

comparatively, verhältnismässig, ziemlich.

compare, vergleichen; —**ison**, Vergleich, *sm.*

compartment, Abtheilung, *f.*, Zimmer, *sn.*, (*of a car*) Koupee, *f.*

compel, zwingen, nöthigen; **be — ed**, müssen.

complain, klagen, sich beklagen (über, *a.*), beklagen (*a.*).

complete, völlig, vollständig, (*entire*) ganz, (*finished*) vollendet, (*perfect*) vollkommen.

complete, *v.* vollenden, zu Ende bringen, beendigen.

complexion, Gesichtsfarbe, *f.*

complimentary, schmeichelhaft.

comprehend, begreifen, fassen.

comrade, Kamerad, *wm.*, Geselle, *wm.*

conceal, (ver)hehlen, (*hide*) verbergen, verstecken.

conceive, (*think of*) sich (*d.*) denken, (*imagine*) sich (*d.*) vorstellen.

concert, Konzert, *sn.*; **in —**, zusammen.

conclude, schliessen, (*decide*) sich entschliessen, beschliessen.

condemn, verurtheilen; **the —ed**, der Verurtheilte.

conduct, führen, leiten.

confess, gestehen, bekennen.

confused, verwirrt, betroffen (14), verblüfft.

congratulate, gratuliren (*d.*).

conjure, beschwören.

connection, Verbindung, Zusammenhang.

conquer, siegen, besiegen, (*a land*) erobern.

consent, einwilligen (in, *a.*).

consequence, Folge, *f.*

consider, (*reflect on*) überlegen, (*take for, — as*) halten für, (*think*) meinen (10), finden (23).

considerably, bedeutend.

consist, — in, bestehen in (*d.*); **— of**, bestehen aus.

constitution, Konstitution, *f.*

consul, Konsul, *m.*

contemptible, verächtlich.

content, zufrieden; *v.* befriedigen.

contest, Streit, *sm.* (um); Kampf, *sm.**

continue, fortfahren, fortsetzen.

contrary, entgegengesetzt, (*unfavourable*) ungünstig, (*headstrong*) starrköpfig; **on the —**, im Gegentheil.

contrast, Gegensatz, *sm.**

contrast, *v.* entgegenstellen (*d.*), abstechen (gegen, von).

conversation, Gespräch, *sn.*, Unterhaltung, *f.*

convey, (*a sense of*) (72), zeigen.

convince, (sich) überzeugen.

cook, Koch, *sm.*,* Köchin, *f.*

cool, kühl; —**ly**, gelassen.

cool, *v.* kühlen.

copy, Vorschrift, *f.*, (*of a book*) Exemplar, *sn.*

coquettish, kokett.

cordial, freundlich; **in the most — fashion**, auf's freundlichste.

corn, Getreide, *n.*, Korn, *sn.* (er).

corner, Ecke, *f.*, Winkel, *sm.*

corpse, Leiche, *f.*

correct, richtig.

correspond (to), entsprechen (*d.*).

cost, kosten.

council, Rath, *sm.**; —**lor**, Rathgeber, *sm.* Räthe, *pl.*

counsel, Rath; **take —**, Rath halten.

count, zählen, rechnen; — **upon**, rechnen auf (*a.*).

countenance, Gesicht, *sn.* (e, er), Antlitz, *sn.*

country, Land, *sn.* (er), Landschaft, *f.*; **in the —** (not *out* of it), im Lande; **in the —** (not *town*), auf dem Lande; **my —**, Vaterland; — **mouse**, Landmans, *sf.*; — **fare**, Landspeise, *f.*, einfaches Essen; — **man**, Landsmann, *sm.* (er).

couple (a), ein paar; — **of days**, ein paar Tage.

courage, Muth, *sm.*; **take —**, Muth fassen, sich ermannen.

course, Lauf, *sm.**; **of —**, natürlich; **a matter of —**, selbstverständlich, das versteht sich ja von selbst.

court, Hof, *sm.*,* (*of justice*) Gericht, *sn.*; — **etiquette**, Hofetikette, *f.*; — **eous**, höflich; —**esy**, Höflichkeit, *f.* —**ier**, Höfling, *sm.*

cousin, Vetter, *mm.* Cousine, *f.*

cover, Decke, *f.*; *v.* decken, bedecken, verdecken.

coward, Feigling, *sm.* —**ly**, feige.

cradle, Wiege, *f.*

cram, einpauken.

create, schaffen, erschaffen; **new — ed**, neuerschaffen.

creature, Geschöpf, *sn.*, Thier (10), *sn.* Ding (11), *sn.*

credible, glaublich, zu glauben.

creep (up), herbeischleichen; — **away**, fortschleichen.

crime, Verbrechen, *sn.*, (*sin*) Sünder, *f.*

criticism, Kritik, *f.*, (*judgment*) Urtheil, *sn.*

crow, krähen.

crowd, Menge, *f.*, Gedrange, *sn.*

crown, Krone, *f.*; **Imperial —**, Kaiserkrone, *f.*

cruelty, Grausamkeit, *f.*

cry, Schrei, *sm.* (for *plur.* use Geschrei).

cry, *v.* schreien, (*call out*) rufen, ausrufen, (*weep*) weinen.

cunning, schlau, listig.

cup, Becher, *sm.*; —**board**, Schrank, *sm.**

cure, (*remedy*) Mittel, *sn.* (gegen).

cure, *v.* heilen, kuriren.

curiosity, Neugier, *sn.*

curious, (*strange*) seltsam, (*peculiar*) eigenthümlich, (*prying*) neugierig.

curls, Locken (*f. plur.*); **to hang in —**, locken.

cushion, Kissen, *sn.*

custom, Sitte, *f.*, (*use*) Gebrauch, *sm.**; —**ary**, gewöhnlich, gebräuchlich.

cut, schneiden, (*wound*) verletzten; **I — my finger**, ich schnitt mich in den Finger; — **off, open**, ab-, aufschneiden.

cute, klug, hübsch.

D.

daily, täglich.

dainty, *adj.*, köstlich; *n.*, Leckerbissen, *sm.*

damp, feucht.

dance, tanzen; — **into**, hineintanzen, (*of fish in a net*) zappeln.

dancer, Tänzer, *sm.*, Tänzerin, *f.*

danger, Gefahr, *f.*; — **ous**, gefährlich.

dare, wagen; —**ing**, kühn.

daresay, I, wohl (21), ich meine.

dark, dunkel; **pitch** —, finster; **in the** —, im Dunkeln; —**ness**, Dunkelheit, *f.*, Finsternis, *sf.*

darling, Liebling, *sm.*

daughter, Tochter, *sf.*; —**in-law**, Schwiegertochter.

dawn, Dämmerung, Morgendämmerung, *f.*

day, Tag, *sm.*; —**break**, Tagesanbruch, *sm.*, Sonnenaufgang, *sm.*; —**light**, Tageslicht, *sn.*(er); **for** —**s**, tagelang.

dead, tot; —**ly enemy**, Todfeind, *sm.*

deaf, taub; —**ness**, Taubheit, *f.*

deal, Theil, *sm.*, (*quantity*) Menge, *f.*, **a good (great)** —, recht viel, sehr viel; —**ing**, Geschäft, *sn.*, Handlung, *f.*

deal, *v.* theilen, austheilen, (*trade*) handeln, Handel treiben.

dear, theuer, (*loved*) theuer, lieb; **oh** —! O, weh!

death, Tod, *sm.*; —**ly pale**, todblass; **put to** —, tödten.

deceive, täuschen, betrügen, (*disappoint*), enttäuschen.

decide, entscheiden, (*resolve*) sich entschliessen; —**ed**, bestimmt, entschieden, kräftig (51).

deck (out), schmücken.

declare, (*explain*) erklären, (*maintain*) behaupten; **I** —! fürwahr.

decline, (*refuse*) abschlagen, absagen.

decorate, schmücken, aufputzen.

deed, That, *f.*

deep, tief.

deer, Reh, *sn.*, (*game*) Wild, *sn.*

defend, vertheidigen, (*protect*) schützen (vor).

defy, trotzen (*d.*).

degree, Grad, *sm.*

dejected, niedergeschlagen.

deliberate, überlegen, (*take counsel*) Rath halten.

delicate, zart, fein, (*weak*) schwächlich.

delight, Freude, *f.*, Entzücken, *sn.*; —**ed**, entzückt (von, über, *a.*); **be** —**ed**, sich freuen (über, *a.*); —**ful**, entzückend, ergötzlich.

deliverance, Befreiung, *f.*

demand, Aufforderung, *f.*

demand, *v.* fordern, (*desire*) verlangen, (*ask*) fragen.

democratic, demokratisch.

demonstrate, beweisen.

depart, abreisen, abfahren.

depend, abhängen (von), ankommen (auf, *a.*), (*rely on*) sich verlassen (auf, *a.*).

deprive, berauben (*g.*).

descend, hinuntersteigen, herabsteigen.

describe, beschreiben.

deserve, verdienen.

desire, Lust, *sf.*; *v.* wünschen, (*will*) wollen; —**ous**, begierig (nach).

despair, Verzweiflung *f.*; —**ing(ly)**, verzweifelt.

despatch, (*hurry*) Eile, *f.*, (*sending*) Absendung, *f.*

despatch, *v.* eilen, absenden, abschicken.

destruction, Verderben, *sn.*

detain, (zurück)halten.

determination, Entschluss, *sm.*, Entschlossenheit, *f.*

determine, sich entschliessen, beschliessen, entscheiden.

deuce, the! Donnerwetter! Potztausend!

develop, (*as of buds*) sich entfalten, entwickeln.

dew, Thau, *sm.*; **the — is falling**, es thaut.

dictionary, Wörterbuch, *sn.*(er).

die, sterben (an, *d.*); **— of curiosity**, vor Neugier platzen (30).

differ, verschieden sein, sich unterscheiden, (*opinion*) anderer Meinung sein; **—ent**, verschieden; **—ence**, Unterschied, *sm.*

difficult, (*quantitative*) schwer, (*qualitative*) schwierig, (*troublesome*) mühsam; **—y**, Schwierigkeit, *f.* Mühe, *f.*

dignity, Würde, *f.*

diligent, fleissig.

diminish, vermindern.

dine, (zu)mittag essen, speisen.

dinner, Mittagessen, *sn.*, (*gala*) Diner; **at —**, bei Tisch; **come to —**, zu Tisch kommen (*sit at the table* = am Tisch sitzen).

direction, Richtung, *f.*, (*guidance*) Leitung, Führung, *f.*

directly, (*immediately*) sogleich.

disappear, verschwinden.

discipline, Disciplin, (Kriegs)zucht, *f.*; **breach of —**, Bruch, Übertretung des Kriegszucht.

disconcert, verblüffen.

discovery, Entdeckung, Erfindung, *f*

disguise, verkleiden.

disgust, Ärger, *sm.*, Ekel, *sm.*

dish, ~~Schüssel~~, *f.* Schüssel.

displease, missfallen (*d.*); **—d** *a.t*, ungehalten über (*a.*).

displeasure, Missfallen, *sn.*

dispute, Streit (um), *sm.*

dispute, *v.* streiten (um, über, *a.*), bestreiten.

dissuade, abrathen (von).

distance, Entfernung, *f.*; **from a long —**, aus weiter Entfernung; **—t**, entfernt, fern.

distinct, deutlich.

distinguish, unterscheiden; **—ed**, (*noble*) vornehm (82), (*excellent*) ausgezeichnet.

distress, Noth, *sf.*

district, Gegend, *f.*, Bezirk, *sm.*

distrust, misstrauen (*d.*); **—ful**, misstrauisch (gegen).

disturb, in Unordnung bringen, (*interrupt*) stören.

ditch, Graben, *sm.**

dive, tauchen.

divide, theilen, (*of time*) eintheilen.

divine, göttlich.

do, thun, (*be busy at*) machen; **how do you do?** wie geht's Ihnen; **that will hardly —**, das ist kaum rathsam, das wird kaum gehen; **that will —** (*suffice*) genügen; **— away with**, abschaffen; **so — I** (29), ich auch; **— without**, entbehren.

doctor, Arzt, *sm.*,* Doktor, *mm.*

dog, Hund, *sm.*

doll, Puppe, *f.*; **— carriage**, Puppenwagen.

dollar, Dollar. (*The German Thaler is worth three marks, or about 75 cents.*)

double, doppelt.

doubt, *v.* zweifeln (an, *d.*), bezweifeln.

doubt, *n.* Zweifel, *sm.*; **in —**, im Zweifel; **—less**, ohne Zweifel, zweifellos, zweifelsohne; **—ful**, zweifelhaft.

down, *adv.*, unten, hinunter, hinab, herab, herunter; **— stairs**, hinunter; **up and —**, auf und ab.

drain, Abzug, *sm.**

draw, ziehen, (*drag*) schleppen, (*sketch*) zeichnen, (*attract*) anziehen.

drawer, Schublade, *f.*

dread, Furcht, *f.*, Schrecken, *sm.*; — **ful**, schrecklich.

dread, *v.* sich fürchten vor.

dream, Traum, *sm.**; — **god**, Traumgott, *sm.* (er); *v.* träumen.

dress, Kleid, *sn.* (er); **well —ed**, gut gekleidet.

dress, *v.*, ankleiden, anziehen.

drift (*onward*), forttreiben.

drink, trinken.

drive, fahren, treiben; — **about**, umherfahren.

drop, Tropfen, *sm.*; *v.* träufeln, (*let fall*) fallen lassen.

drown, *tr.*, ertränken, *intr.*, ertrinken.

dry, trocken; *v.* trocknen.

due, schuldig, (*seeming*) gebührend; — **to**, ...zu verdanken (*d.*).

duel, Duell, *sn.*, Zweikampf, *sm.**

dust, Staub, *sm.*

duty, Pflicht, *f.*

dwell, wohnen; **—ing**, Wohnung, *f.*; **—inghouse**, Wohnhaus, *sn.*(er).

E.

each (one), jeder; — **other**, einander (*also expressed by reflex. pron.*).

eager, (*zealous*) erfrig, (*desirous*) begierig; hungrig (29).

ear, Ohr, *nn.*, (*of corn*) Ähre, *f.*

early, früh.

earn, verdienen, gewinnen.

earnest, Ernst, *sm.*; **—ly**, ernst.

earth, Erde, *f.*, Welt, *f.*

easy, leicht.

East, Osten, *sm.*

eat, essen, (*of beasts*) fressen, auffressen, (*dine*) speisen; **to — one's fill**, sich satt essen.

edge, Rand, *sm.*(er); **to the very —**, zum Rande selbst.

education, Bildung, Erziehung, *f.*

educated, gebildet.

effect, Wirkung, (*impression*) Eindruck, *sm.*,* (*result*) Folge, *f.*

effort, Anstrengung, *f.*, (*trouble*) Bemühung, *f.*

egg, Ei, *sn.*(er).

eh? nicht wahr?

either, *pron.* einer, jeder; *conj.* — ....or entweder.... oder, auch nicht.

elder, älter; **—ly**, ältlich.

elegant, elegant, fein.

element, Element, *sn.*

else, anders, sonst; **anything —**, sonst etwas, etwas anders; **no one —**, niemand anders.

embarrass, verlegen machen; **—ment**, Verlegenheit, *f.*

Eminence, (*title*) Eminenz, *f.*

Emperor, Kaiser, *sm.*

emphatically, nachdrücklich, (*expressly*) ausdrücklich.

Empire, Reich, *sn.*, Kaiserreich.

enable (73), in den Stand setzen.

encourage, ermutigen, (*advise*) rathen (*d.*).

End, Ende, *nn.*, (*purpose*) Zweck, *sm.*, (*of life*) Ende, Absterben, *sn.*

end, *v.* endigen, beendigen, zu Ende bringen; **come to an —**, zu Ende kommen; **put an — to**, ein Ende machen.

endure, ertragen, vertragen, (*abide*) aushalten.

enemy, Feind.

energetically, energisch, (*lively*) lebhaft.

engage, (*excite*) erregen.

England, England, *sn.*; **—lish**, englisch.

enjoy, geniessen, mögen (22), sich unterhalten; **he —ed his supper**, das Abendessen schmeckte ihm.

enough, genug; **be good —**, die Güte haben (5), so gut sein.

enter, treten (in, *a.*), eintreten, betreten; — **into**, (*an arrangement*) eingehen in (*a.*), sich einlassen auf (*a.*).

entertainment, Fest, *sn.*, Festlichkeit, *f.*

enthusiasm, Begeisterung, *f.*, (*gush*) Schwärmerei, *f.*

entirely, gänzlich.

entrance, Eingang, *sm.*,* Einzug, *sm.**

entreat, ersuchen; **—y**, ernstliche Bitte.

equal, gleich; **to be —** (*like*), gleichen.

erase, auskratzen.

erect, aufrecht.

escape, entkommen, entgehen.

especially, besonders.

establish, festsetzen, (*found*) gründen, begründen.

esteem, schätzen.

etc., u. s. w., u. s, f. (=und so weiter, ferner).

eternal, ewig.

etiquette, Etikette, *f.*

even, selbst, sogar.

evening, Abend, *sm.*; **in the —**, am Abend, Abends; **when — came**, als es Abend wurde.

ever, je, jemals, (*always*) immer; **for —**, auf immer; **—lasting**, ewig, dauernd.

every, jeder; **—body**, jedermann; **—thing**, alles; **where**, überall; **— day**, jeden Tag, alle Tage, tagtäglich; **— time**, jedesmal.

evil, Übel, *sn.*; **—doer**, Missethäter, *sm.*; **for good or for —**, zum Heil oder Unheil.

evil, *adj.*, böse, übel.

exact, genau; **—ly**, gerade, eben, genau.

examination, Examen, *sn.*, Prüfung, *f.*

example, Beispiel, *sn.*, (*model*) Muster, *sn.*

excellent, ausgezeichnet, vortrefflich.

except, ausser, mit Ausnahme; **— one**, ausser einem, einen ausgenommen.

exception, Ausnahme, *f.*

exchange, Börse, *f.*; *v.* wechseln.

excitement, Aufregung, *f.*

exclaim, ausrufen.

excuse, entschuldigen; *n.*, Entschuldigung, *f.*

exercise, Aufgabe, *f.*, (*motion*) Bewegung (19); *v.* exerciren.

exertion, Anstrengung, *f.*

exorbitant, unverschämt.

expand, erweitern, ausbreiten.

expect, erwarten.

experience, Erfahrung, *f.*; *v.* erfahren, empfinden; **—d**, erfahren.

explain, erklären, (*put before*) vorstellen (21).

explore, forschen (21), erforschen.

expose (one's self to), sich aussetzen (*d.*), ausstellen.

express, ausdrücken, Ausdruck geben (*d.*), (*thanks*) Dank abstatten; **—ive**, ausdrucksvoll, ausdrücklich; **—ion**, Ausdruck, *sm.**

extempore, frei (vortragen), aus dem Stegreif (*stirrup*) reden.

extend, ausdehnen, ausbreiten.

extraordinary, ausserordentlich.

extravagant, verschwenderisch, (*excessive*) übermässig.

eye, Auge, *nn.*; **—lash**, Augenwimper, *f.*; **—lid**, Augenlid, *sn.*(er); **lose the use of the —s**, blind werden; **be attractive to the —**, in die Augen fallen, (*blind*) **in one —**, auf einem Auge.

F.

fable, Fabel, *f.*

face, Gesicht, *sn.*(e, er).

fact, Thatsache, *f.*

fade, welken, verwelken, (*of colors*) verbleichen.

fail, (*want*) fehlen, mangeln (an *d.*), (*in examination*) durchfallen.

fair, hell, schön, gelb (83).

faith, Glaube (an, *a.*) *mm.*, (*trust*) Vertrauen (an, *a.*); —**ful**, treu, gewissenhaft.

fall, fallen, abfallen, (*tumble*) stürzen, hinfallen; — **to the lot of**, zu Theil werden (*d.*).

fame, Ruhm, *sm.*; —**ous**, berühmt (wegen).

family, Familie, *f.*

famished, verhungert.

fancy, Phantasie, *f*; *v.*(*think*)meinen.

far, weit entfernt; — **and wide**, weit und breit.

farewell, lebewohl.

farm, Gut, Bauerngut, *sn.*(er).

fast, schnell, rasch, (*of rain*) stark, (*firm*) fest; — **on** (16), fest angewachsen.

fasten, fest machen.

fate, Schicksal, *sn.*, Los, *sn.*

father, Vater, *sm.**; **grand**—, Grossvater; (*priest*) Pater; —**land**, Vaterland.

fatigue, Müdigkeit, *f.*

fault, Fehler, *sm.*; —**less**, -**y**, fehlerfrei, -haft; **find** — **with**, tadeln (*a.*).

favour, Gefallen, *sm.*, Gunst, *f.* (for *plur.* use Gunstbezeigungen); **to do a** —, (einem) einen Gefallen thun.

fear, Furcht, *f.*, (*anxiety*) Besorgnis; *v.* sich fürchten (vor, *d.*), fürchten (*a.*); —**ful**, furchtbar, fürchterlich.

feast, Fest, *sn.*, Schmaus, *sm.**

feature, Zug, *sm.**; —**s**, Gesicht *sn.*(er).

fee, Honorar, *sn.*

feed, füttern; **to be fed**, zu füttern.

feel, fühlen; — **well**, sich wohl befinden, sich wohl fühlen; —**ing**, Gefühl, *sn.*

fell, fällen.

fellow, Kerl, *sm.*, Bursche, *wm.*, *in cpds.*, Mit-.

ferry (over), übersetzen; —**man**, Fährmann, *sm.*(er).

fetch, holen, hervorholen.

few, a, wenige, einige, ein paar.

field, Feld, *sn.*(er), (*tilled*) Acker, *sm.**

fig, Feige, *f.*

fight, fechten, kämpfen.

figure, Ziffer, *f.*

filial, kindlich.

fill, füllen.

final, endgültig; —**ly**, endlich.

find, finden, suchen.

fine, schön, elegant, klein (80), gut (82).

finger, Finger, *sm.*

finish, beendigen, zu Ende bringen, fertig machen.

fire, Feuer, *sn.*; —**place**, Kamin, *sm.*

firm, fest.

first, erst; **at** —, zuerst, anfangs (25).

fish, Fisch, *sm.*; —**erman**, Fischer, *sm.*; **queer** —, seltsamer Kerl (30).

fish, *v.* fischen.

fit (for), geeignet zu; **be** —**ted for**, sich eignen zu; *n.* Anfall, *sm.**; **a second** — (73), zum zweiten Male.

fit, *v.* anpassen, auflegen (69).

fix, anheften, befestigen; — **up**, aufputzen (81).

flag, nachlassen.

flagstone, Fliesstein, *sm.*

flame, Flamme, *f.*

flash (*of lightning*), Blitz, *sm.*

flat, flach, platt, (*common*) gemein, geschmacklos.

flatter, schmeicheln (*d.*); —**y**, Schmeichelei, *f.*

flee, fliehen, sich flüchten (vor, *d.*).

flesh, Fleisch, *sn.*

flood, Flut, *f.*

floor, Boden, Fussboden, *sm.*

flower, Blume, *f.*; —**pot**, Blumentopf, *sm.*

flute, Flöte, *f.*, *v.* flöten.

flutter, flattern.

fly, fliegen.

foe, Feind, *sm.* **Feindin**, *f.*

fog, Nebel, *sm.*

folk, Volk, *sn.*(er), Leute (*plur.*).

follow, folgen (*d.*), (*succeed*) folgen (auf, *a.*), nachfolgen (*d.*); — **behind**, hinter....herfahren; **as** —**s**, folgendermassen; **the** — **ing**, das folgende, folgendes.

follower, Anhänger, *sm.*

fond, liebevoll, zärtlich; **be** — **of**, lieben; — **like to** (*hear, read, etc.*), gerne (hören, lesen, u. s. w.).

food, Speise, Nahrung, *f.*

fool, Thor, Narr, *wm.*; —**ish**, thöricht.

foot, Fuss, *sm.*; **on** —, zu Fuss; (*paw*) Pfote, Pfötchen.

for, *prep.* für, (*cause*) wegen, (*exchange*) für, um; *in expressions of time not translated*, lang, über *or* hindurch *may follow the accusative used. With some verbs*, nach (can generally be explained as *motion*), *with others*, um (an object *about* which there is a dispute).

for, *conj.*, denn.

force, zwingen; *n.* Kraft, *sf.* Macht, *sf.* Gewalt, *f.*

forefathers, Voreltern, *pl.*

forefoot, Vorderfuss, *sm.*, Vorderpfötchen, *sn.*

foreigner, Ausländer, *sm.*, Fremder (*adj. decl.*).

forenoon, Vormittag, Vm.

forest, Wald, *sm.*(er).

fork, Gabel, *f.*

forget, vergessen (*a.* or *g.*).

forgive, vergeben, verzeihen (*d. pers.*).

form, Gestalt *f.*, Form, *f.*, Wuchs, *sm.*; *v.* bilden.

former, vorig; —**ly**, früher.

fortunate, glücklich.

fortune, Glück, *sn.*

fox, Fuchs, *sm.*

France, Frankreich.

free, frei; *v.* befreien.

freeze, frieren, erfrieren.

French, französisch; **the** —**man**, der Franzose.

fresh, frisch; **nice and** —, recht frisch.

friend, Freund, *sm.*; —**less**, freundlos; —**ship**, Freundschaft; —**ly**, freundlich.

fright, Schrecken, *sm.*; —**en**, erschrecken, *wk.*; **take** —, scheu werden (vor *d.*), scheuen; —**ful**, schrecklich, fürchterlich, gewaltig (5).

from, von, aus; with verbs of *depriving, removing, etc., use dative alone.*

front, Vorderseite, *f.*; **in** — **of**, vor.

fruit, Obst, *sn.*, Frucht, *sf.*

full, voll.

fun, Spass, *sm.*, (*joke*) Scherz, *sm.*; **make** — **of**, sich lustig machen über (*a.*), zum Besten haben.

furiously, wüthend.

further, weiter; **something** —, weiteres (7).

fury, Wuth, *f.*

future, Zukunft, *f.*; *adj.* künftig, zukünftig.

G.

gain, gewinnen.

gallery, Gallerie, *f.*

game, Wild, *sn.*, (*play*) Spiel, *sn.*

garden, Garten, *sm.*; **zoological** —**s**, Thiergarten; —**er**, Gärtner, *sm.*

gather, sammeln, (*pick*) pflücken, lesen.

general, allgemein; **in** —, im Allgemeinen, in der Regel; —**ly**, überhaupt.

general, *n.*, General, *sm.*

genius, (*good or evil*) Genius, *m.* (*plur.* —ien), (*good*) Schutzgeist, *sm.*(er).

gentle, sanft, freundlich.

genuine, echt.

German, deutsch; **in** —, auf deutsch; —**y**, Deutschland, *n.*; **a** —, ein Deutscher (*adj. inflection*).

get, (*become*) werden, (*receive*) bekommen, erhalten, (*fetch*) holen, (*cause*) lassen, (*find*) finden; — **there** (23), dahinrathen; — **out**, herauskommen; —**through with**, beendigen; — **along with** (*people*), umgehen (mit); — **at** (*a piece of work*), sich machen an (*a.*), aussuchen (77); — **up**, (*rise*) aufstehen; — **in** (*carriage*), einsteigen; — **off**, davonkommen; — **through** (*examination*), durchkommen.

ghost, Geist, *sm.*(er).

gift, Gabe, *f.*, Geschenk, *sn.*

girl, Mädchen, *sn.*; —**ie**, Mädel, *sn.*

give, geben, (*present*) machen, (*quote, cite*) angeben, anführen; — **in**, nach, geben, sich fügen, (*a report*) erstatten, (*a task*) aufgeben (28); — **up**, aufgeben.

glad, froh, erfreut; **be** —, sich freuen (über *a.*); **be** — **to**, gern, *e.g.*; **I shall be** — **to do it**, ich werde es gern thun; — **ly**, gern.

glance, blicken.

glass, Glas, *sn.*(er); — **door**, Glasthür, *f.*

glisten, glänzen, schimmern.

glitter, glänzen, funkeln.

globe, Kugel, *f.*

glory, Herrlichkeit, *f.*, (*fame*) Ruhm, *sm.**; —**ious**, herrlich.

glow, glühen, leuchten; *n.* Gluth, *f.*

gnash, knirschen.

gnaw, nagen.

go, gehen, (*ride*) reiten, (*in a carriage*) fahren, (*travel*) reisen; — **on**, (*continue*) fortsetzen; — **up** (83), emporsteigen; — **by**, (*pass*) vorbeigehen, (*of time*) verfliessen; — **too fast**, — **slow**, (*of clocks*) vor-, nachgehen; — **out**, ausgehen, (*of lights*) erlöschen.

goat, Ziege, *f.*

goblin, Kobold, *sm.*

God, Gott, *sm.*(er).

gold, Gold, *sn.*; —**en**, golden.

gone, weg, fort (15).

good, gut; **be** — (*useful*), von Nutzen sein; **do** —, (einem) gut thun; — **deal**, recht, ziemlich viel; — **bye**, Adieu, Lebewohl; — **bye till my next** (7), Adieu bis ich wieder schreibe; **for** — **or for evil**, zum Heil oder Unheil; **for** —**ness sake**, um des Himmels willen; — **hearted**, gutherzig; — **humored**, gutmüthig; — **nature**, Gutmüthigkeit, *f.*; — **Friday**, Charfreitag.

goods, Waaren, Sachen, *f. plur.*

goose, Gans, *sf.*

govern, regieren; —**ment**, Regierung, *f.*; —**or**, Gouverneur, *sm.*

graceful, anmuthig, schlank.

gracious (**good**), Potztausend! du lieber Himmel!

gradual, allmählig.

grain, Korn, *sn.*(er), (*collectively*) Getreide; — **of sand**, Sandkörnchen, *sn.*

grammar, Grammatik, *f.*

grand, gross, grossartig, herrlich; —**eur**, Herrlichkeit, *f.*; —**mother**, Grossmutter, *sf.*

grant, gewähren, (*give*) geben.

grass, Gras, *sn.*(er).

grate, (*fireplace*) Kamin, *sm.*

grateful, dankbar; —**itude**, Dankbarkeit, *f.*

grave, Grab, *sn.*(er).

great, gross; **a** — **many**, sehr viele, eine Menge, *f.*; —**ly**, sehr; — **grandfather**, Urgrossvater, *sm.**

greedy (85), goldgierig.

Greek, der Grieche (*adj. inflection*); *adj.*, griechisch.

green, grün.

greet, grüssen, begrüssen; —**ing**, Gruss, *sm.*

grief, Kummer, *sm.*, Gram, *sm.*

groan, stöhnen.

ground, Boden, *sm.*,* (*earth*) Erde, (*reason*) Grund, *sm.*; —**ed**, Grund haben.

grow, wachsen, (*become*) werden.

grumble, brummen, murren.

guard, (*protect*) schützen, (*watch*) bewachen; *n.* Wächter, *sm.*

guess, (er)rathen, (*think*) meinen.

guest, Gast, *sm.**

guilty, schuldig.

guise, Äussere(s) (*adj. inflection*).

gun, Flinte, *f.*

gushing, schwärmerisch.

gutter, Rinnstein, *sm.*

H.

habit, Gewohnheit, *f.*; **to be in the — of**, pflegen.

hair, Haar, *sn.*

half. Hälfte, *f.*; *adj.* halb; —**crazed**, halbverrückt.

ham, Schinken, *sm.*

hand, Hand, *sf.*, (*side*) Seite, *f.*; —**y**, bequem; **at —**, zur Hand; **on —**, vorräthig; **on the one —**, einerseits; **on the other —**, andrerseits; **to get the upper —**, Oberhand nehmen.

hand, *v.* reichen (*d.*); **— over**, überreichen, herausgeben.

handsome, schön, hübsch.

hang, hängen, aufhängen, behängen, anhängen.

happen, geschehen, vorkommen (28); **he — ed to be travelling**, er reiste zufällig; **do you — to know?** Wissen Sie vielleicht?

happy, glücklich, fröhlich, heiter.

hard, hart, tüchtig (23), (*study*) fleissig, (*difficult*) schwer, (*severe*) treng —**ly**, kaum.

hare, Hase, *wm.*

harsh, rauh, barsch, (*rough*) derb.

harvest, Ernte, *f.*; **— time**, Erntezeit, *f.*

haste, Eile, *f.*; **make —**, eilen, beeilen; —**ily**, eiligst.

hat, Hut, *sm.**

hate, Hass, *sm.*; —**ful**, hässlich.

haul (*of fish*), Zug, *sm.**

have, haben; — **to**, (*be obliged*) müssen, (*as auxiliary*) haben *or* sein (*see Grammar*), (*receive*) bekommen, (*order*) lassen.

head, Kopf, *sm.*,* (*poetic* and *chief*) Haupt, *sn.*(er), Oberhaupt; —**ache**, Kopfschmerzen, *sn.*, Kopfweh, *sn.*; — **long, heels over —**, kopfüber, Hals über Kopf; — **downwards**, Hals über Kopf.

heal, heilen.

health, Gesundheit, *f.*; —**y**, gesund.

hear, hören, zuhören.

heart, Herz, *nn.*; **by —**, auswendig; **with my whole —**, von ganzem Herzen; —**ily**, herzlich.

heat, Hitze, *f.*; - **ing**, Heizung, *f.*

heathen, Heide, *wm.*

heaven, Himmel, *sm.*; —**ly**, himmlisch; **good —s!** du lieber Himmel!

heavy, schwer, (*of rain*) stark.

hedge, hedgerow, Hecke, *f.*

heed, Acht, *f.*; *v.* Acht geben (auf, *a.*).

heir, Erbe, *wm.*

helmet, Helm, *sm.*

help, helfen (*d.*) herausholen (23); **he cannot — seeing**, er kann nicht umhin zu sehen.

help, *n.* Hülfe, *f.*; —**ful**, hülfreich; — **less**, hülflos.

herald, Herold, *sm.*

herb, Kraut, *sn.*(er), Pflanze, *f.*

here, hier, (*of this place*) hiesig ; — **upon**, hierauf.

hidden, verborgen.

hide, verbergen, verstecken ; —**ing-place**, Versteck, *sm.*, *n.*

high, hoch ; — **treason**, Hochverrath, *sm.* ; —**ness** (*title*), Hoheit, *f.*

hill, Hügel, *sm.*

hind-, Hinter-, hinter- ; — **paw**, Hinterpfote.

hinder, hindern, (*stop*) verhindern.

hindrance, Hindernis, *sn.*

hint, Wink, *sm.* ; **take the** —, den Wink verstehen.

hire, miethen.

history, Geschichte, *f.*

hit, treffen, schlagen.

hither, hierher ; — **and thither**, hierhin und dorthin.

hold, halten, (*consider*) halten (für).

hole, Loch, *sn.*(er).

holiday, Feiertag, *sm.* ; —**s**, Ferien.

Holland, Holland.

home, (*land, etc.*) Heimat, *f.*, Heim, *sn.* ; **at** —, zu Hause ; **go** —, nach Hause gehen.

honest, ehrlich ; —**y**, Ehrlichkeit, Aufrichtigkeit, *f.*

honor, Ehre, *f.* ; **to do one the** —, einem die Ehre anthun.

hop, hüpfen.

hope, hoffen ; *n.* Hoffnung, *f.* ; —**ful**, hoffnungsvoll ; **I** — (*expletive*), hoffentlich.

horizontal, horizontal.

horn, Horn, *sn.*(er) ; — **of plenty**, Füllhorn, vollauf genug.

horrible, entsetzlich, gewaltig (5), schrecklich.

horror, Entsetzen, *sn.* ; — **struck**, entsetzt.

horse, Pferd, *sn.*

horticulturist, Gartenkünstler, *sm.*

hospital, Hospital, *sn.*(er).

host, Wirth, *sm.*, Gastwirth, (*a great number*) Schaar, *f.*, (*army*) Heer, *sn.* ; —**ility**, Feindlichkeit (gegen).

hot, heiss.

hotel, Hotel, *sn.* (*plur.* -s).

hour, Stunde, *f.* ; **for** —**s**, stundenlang ; **for (of) several** —**s**, mehrstündig ; **what is the** —? was ist die Zeit, wie viel Uhr ist es?

house, Haus, *sn.*(er) ; **keep** —, den Haushalt führen.

how, wie ; — **to**, (with verbs of *knowing, understanding, learning*) zu.

howl, heulen, pfeifen (83).

huddle (together), (sich) zusammenkauern (83).

hunger, Hunger, *sm.* ; **die of** —, verhungern.

hunt, jagen (nach) ; — **up**, aufsuchen ; —**er**, Jäger, *sm.* ; —**ing season**, Jagdzeit, *f.*

hurrah, hurra ! *v.* (*shout*) jubeln.

hurry, Eile, *f.* ; **in a** —, eiligst ; *v.* eilen, (*drag*) schleppen (25).

hurt, (*pain*) weh thun (*d.*), (*wound*) verletzen (19).

husband, Mann, *sm.*(er), Ehemann, Gatte, *wm.*

hypocrite, Heuchler, *sm.*

I.

idea, (*thought*) Gedanke, *mm.*, (*comprehension*) Begriff, *sm.*, (*suspicion*) Ahnung, *f.*, (*sudden*) Einfall, *sm.*

idealist, Idealist, *wm.*

if, wenn, (*whether*) ob ; **as** —, als ob.

ignorant, unwissend ; — **looking**, unwissend aussehend.

ill, (*sick*) krank ; —**ness**, Krankheit, *f.*

imagine, sich (*d.*) vorstellen, einbilden.

immediately, gleich, sogleich ; — **before**, unmittelbar vorher.

immortal, unsterblich.

imperial, kaiserlich, (*in epds.*) Kaiser-; — **crown**, Kaiserkrone.

impertinent, frech, unverschämt; --**ce**, Frechheit, Unverschämtheit, *f.*

important, wichtig.

impossible, unmöglich.

improbable, unwahrscheinlich.

impudent, frech, unverschämt.

in, in; — **German**, auf deutsch; — **the opinion**, nach der Meinung; — **the shape of**, als; —**asmuch**, (*since*) da, weil.

incline, neigen; —**ation**, Neigung, *f.*

incognito, incognito.

incomparably, unvergleichlich.

incomprehensible, unverständlich, unbegreiflich.

increase, mehren, vermehren, (*grow*) wachsen, zunehmen.

indeed, in der That, zwar, freilich.

indicate, hindeuten (auf, *a.*), anzeigen.

indifferent, gleichgültig (gegen).

indulge (in), sich (*d.*) erlauben; — **in praise**, sich erlauben zu loben.

industrious, fleissig.

infirmity, Krankheit, Schwäche, *f.*

inflict, auferlegen.

influence, Einfluss (auf, *a.*) *sm.*; —**tial**, einflussreich.

influence, *v.* beeinflussen.

inform, benachrichtigen, berichten; —**ation**, Nachricht, *f.*

inhabit, wohnen, bewohnen; —**ant**, Einwohner, Bewohner, *sm.*; —**ant of**, (*often expressed by* adj. in -er) Berliner, Schwarzwälder, *etc.*

injure, (*wound*) verletzen.

inn, Gasthaus, *sn.*(er); — **keeper**, Gastwirth, *sm.*

innocence, Unschuld, *f.*; —**cent**, unschuldig.

inquire, fragen, wissen wollen, sich erkundigen (nach).

inside, inwendig, im Innern, innen.

insist, bestehen (auf, *a.*).

insolent, frech, keck, dreist.

inspect, (*examine*) untersuchen.

inspiration, Begeisterung, *f.*

instance, Beispiel, *sn.*; **for** —, (*e. g.*) zum Beispiel (z. B.).

instead, dafür; — **of**, anstatt, statt (*g.*); (*with verbal nouns* use anstatt and infinitive with zu).

instruct, unterrichten; —**ion**, Unterricht, *sm.*

intend, beabsichtigen, gedenken; **be** — **ed to**, sollen (86).

intention, Absicht, *f.*; **his** —**s are good**, er meint es gut.

intercourse, Verkehr, *sm.*, Gemeinschaft (28), *f.*

interesting, interessant.

intimate, vertraut, intime.

introduce, einführen, (*present*) vorstellen.

introduction, Einführung, Vorstellung, *f.*; **letter of** —, Empfehlungsbrief.

invent, erfinden.

investigation, Untersuchung, *f.*

invitation, Einladung, *f.*

invite, einladen.

iron, Eisen, *sn.*; *adj.*, eisen.

island, Insel, *f.*

issue, ergehen lassen.

J.

jacket, Jacke, *f.*

jam, Eingemachtes (*adj. inflection*).

jar, schwirren.

Jesuit, Jesuit, *wm.*

John, Johannes; **St.** —**'s church**, St. Johanneskirche, *f.*

join, sich anschliessen (an, *a.*), (*enter*) eintreten (26) (in, *a.*), einstimmen; —

the amusements, mit bei dem Spiele sein.

joke, scherzen (mit), zum Besten haben; *n.* Scherz, *sm.*; —r, Witzling, *sm.*

journey, Reise, *f.*, Fahrt, *f.*; — **around the world**, Weltreise; — **by sea**, Seereise.

joy, Freude, *f.*

judge, mittheilen (nach); *n.*, Richter, *sm.*; —**ment**, Urtheil, *sn.*, Bestrafung, *f.*

jump, Satz, *sm.**; *v.* springen; — **in**, hineinspringen (29); — **out**, hinausspringen; — **up**, aufspringen.

just, gerecht; doch, einmal; eben, nur gerade; erst.

justice, Gerechtigkeit, *f.*

K.

keep, (*hold*) halten, (*retain*) behalten, (*keep back*) zurückhalten, (*preserve*) aufbewahren, (*remain*) bleiben, sich verhalten; — **quiet**, schweigen, (*used with a progressive force*, such as *kept doing*) that, noch immer that, immer zu that, fuhr fort zu thun; — **an hour in advance**, eine Stunde vorgehen lassen.

kill, töten, umbringen.

kind, Art; **of all** —**s**, aller Art, aller Sorten; —**ness**, Güte, *f.*, Freundlichkeit, *f.*; **soul of** —**ness**, die Güte selbst.

kind, *adj.*, freundlich; —**ly let us know** (27), Seien Sie doch so gut, uns wissen zu lassen; — **hearted**, gutherzig.

kindle, zünden, streichen.

king, König, *sm.*; —**dom**, Königreich, Reich, *sn.*

kiss, küssen.

kitchen, Küche, *f.*

kitten, Kätzchen, *sn.*

knave, Schelm, *sm.*, Schalk, *sm.**; —**ry**, Schelmerei, Unehrlichkeit, *f.*

knee, Knie *sn.*

kneel, knieen,

knife, Messer, *sn.*

knight, Ritter, *sm.*

knock, (*strike*) schlagen, (*for admittance*) klopfen, anklopfen.

know, (*a thing*) wissen, (*a person*) kennen; — **how**, wissen.

known, bekannt; **make** —, verkünden, bekannt machen.

L.

labour, Arbeit, *f.*; —**er**, Arbeiter, *sm.*

lace, Spitze, *f.*; *v.* schnüren; —**leg**, Schnürbein, *sn.*

lack, Mangel, *sm.** (an, *d.*).

lade, laden, beladen.

lady, Dame, *f*, (*wife*) Frau, Gemahlin, *f.*

laid up, to be, zu Bette liegen (27).

lake, See, *mm.*

lame, lahm.

lament, klagen, beklagen.

lamp, Lampe, *f.*

land, Land, *sn.*(er); *v.* landen; —**lord, lady**, Wirth, *sm.*; Wirthin, *f.*; —**scape**, Landschaft, *f.*; **main**—, Festland.

language, Sprache, *f.*

large, gross, weit.

last, *superl.* letzt; **at** —, endlich, zuletzt; — **evening**, gestern Abend; — **of all**, allerletzt; **to the** —, bis zum letzten.

last, *v.* dauern, ausreichen (72).

late, spät, (*deceased*) selig, verstorben; **be** — (sich) verspäten (9); **too** —, verspätet; **be** — **for**, versäumen; —**ly**, kürzlich, neulich, vor kurzem; **at the** —**est**, spätestens (7).

latter, letzterer, dieser.

laugh, lachen (über, *a.*); **to** — **one's self sick**, sich tot lachen; —**ter**, Gelächter, *sn.*; **break out in loud** —**ter**, in ein schallendes Gelächter ausbrechen.

lavish, verschwenden; *adj.* verschwenderisch, freigebig, übermässig.

law, Gesetz, *sn.*; —**ful**, gesetzlich.

lay, legen: — **aside**, ablegen, bei Seite legen; — **hold of**, anfassen, ergreifen (84).

lazy, faul, träge.

lead, Blei, *sn.*; — **pencil**, Bleistift, *sm.*

leader, Führer, *sm.*

leaf, Blatt, *sn.*(er).

lean, *adj.* dünn, mager; *v.* lehnen (an, *a.*).

leap, springen; — **about**, umherspringen.

leapyear, Schaltjahr, *sn.*

learn, lernen, (*hear*) erfahren.

least, (*superl.*) kleinst, geringst; **at** —, wenigstens; **not in the** —, nicht im geringsten.

leave, lassen, (*quit*) verlassen, (*travel*) abfahren, abreisen; — **off**, aufhören ablassen; — **alone**, gut sein lassen; in Ruhe lassen; *n.* (*permission*) Erlaubnis, *f.*, (*farewell*) Abschied, *sm.*

lecture, Vorlesung, *f.*, Vortrag, *sm.**; **give —s on**, Vorlesungen über (*a.*) .... halten.

left, link; **on the** —, links; **to the** —, nach links.

leg, Bein, *sn.*

legend, Sage, *f.*

lemontree, lime tree, Citrone, *f.*

lend, leihen, borgen (*fam.*).

length, Länge, *f.*; **at full** —, so lang er war (86); **at** —, (*at last*) endlich.

less, weniger, geringer.

lesson, Lection, *f.*, (*hour of instruction*) Stunde, *f.*, (*task*) Aufgabe, *f.*, (*instruction*) Unterricht, *sm.*

lest, *conj.* dass, damit nicht.

let, lassen, darf ich Sie bitten (73).

letter, (*of alphabet*) Buchstabe, *wm.*, (*epistle*) Brief, *sm.*; — **of introduction**, Empfehlungsbrief; —**s**, Litteratur, *f.*

liberator, Befreier, *sm.*

lid, Deckel, *sm.*; **eye**—, Augenlid *sn.*(er).

lie, liegen; — **down**, sich hinlegen, niederlegen.

life, Leben, *sn.*, (*course of life*) Wandel, *sm.*

lift, heben.

light, *adj.* hell, (*weight*) leicht; *n.* Licht, *sn.*(er), Glanz, *sm.**; *v.* anzünden; — **up**, beleuchten.

like, gleich (*d.*); *adv.* wie; *v.* (leiden) mögen, gern haben; **I** — **to do**, ich thue ern; — (*meat, tea*), gern essen, trinken; **I** — **coffee better, I prefer coffee**, ich trinke lieber Kaffee, ich ziehe Kaffee vor; **as often as you** —, so oft wie Sie wollen (wünschen); — **to keep up a connection** (47), gern in Verbindung bleiben; —**wise**, gleichfalls, ebenso.

limb, Glied, *sn.*(er), (*branch*) Ast, *sm.*,* Zweig, *sm.*

limp, hinken.

line, Linie, *f.*

lion, Löwe, *wm.*

listen, horchen, zuhören.

literally, buchstäblich, wörtlich.

little, klein, gering; — **by** —, nach und nach.

live, leben, (*dwell*) wohnen; —**ing**, Leben, *sn.*; *adj.* lebendig; —**ingroom**, Wohnzimmer, *sn.*; —**lihood**, Unterhalt, *sm.*

load, Last, *f.*; *v.* laden.

locomotive, Lokomotive, *f.*

long, *adj.*, lang; *adv.*, lange; —**er**, länger; **no** —**er**, nicht mehr; — **live the king**, der König lebe hoch; — **ago**, vor langer Zeit, lange her.

long, *v.* sehnen (nach); wie gern wollteer (29), so wünschen (30)

look, schauen, sehen, blicken, (*appear*) aussehen, sich anschicken (27), scheinen; — **after**, sehen (nach); — **around**, (sich) umsehen; — **at**, ansehen (*a.*), (*examine*) besehen; — **down**, herabschauen; — **for**, (*seek*)

suchen (*a. or* nach), (*expect*) erwarten ; — **forward to**, sich freuen auf (*a.*) ; — **in the face**, ins Gesicht schauen ; — **on** (*a book*), einsehen in (*a.*) ; — **up, down**, die Augen auf —, niederschlagen ; — **like**, ähnlich sehen (*d.*).

look, *n.*, Blick, *sm.*, (*appearance*) Aussehen, *sn.* ; *interj.* sieh(e) ! **on—er**, Zuschauer, *sm.* ; **—ing glass**, Spiegel, *sm.*

loose, los, (*texture*) locker ; *v.* losmachen.

lose, verlieren ; — **one's way**, sich verirren.

loss, Verlust, *sm.*

lot, Theil, *sm.*, *n.*, (*fate*) Los, *sn.*, Schicksal, *sn.* ; **fall to one's —**, einem zu Theil werden.

loud, laut.

love, Liebe, (*preference*) Vorliebe (30), *f.* ; *v.* lieben ; **in — with**, verliebt, vernarrt in (*d.*) ; **—ly**, wunderschön, lieblich.

low, niedrig.

luck, Glück, *sn.* ; **—ily**, glücklicherweise.

lump, Klumpen, *sm.*

luxury, Luxus, *sm.* ; **every —**, allerlei Luxus.

M.

machine, Maschine, *f.* ; — **oil**, Maschinenöl, *sn.*

mad, (*insane*) wahnsinnig, (*crazy*) toll, (*angry*) wüthend, zornig.

madam, Frau, *f.*

maintain, (*claim*) behaupten, betheuern.

mainland, Festland, *sn.*(er).

majesty, Majestät, *f.*

make, machen, (*cause*) lassen, veranlassen (79), machen dass ; — **up**, (*invent*) erfinden, erdenken ; — **out**, (*a pass*) ausfertigen, (*a bill*) einreichen ; — **off**, sich davon, aus dem Staube machen ; — **a report**, einen Bericht erstatten.

malady, Krankheit, *f.*

man, Mann, *sm.*(er), (*human being*) Mensch, *wm.*, (*contemptuously*) Kerl, *sm.* ; *often not to be translated*, e.g., der Reiche, der Alte ; — **of honour**, Ehrenmann ; **—ikin**, Männlein, *sn.* ; **—kind**, Menschengeschlecht, *sn.*(er), Menschen (*plur.*).

manner, Art, Weise, *f.*

many, viele ; — **people**, viele ; — **a, mancher** ; **a good —**, viele, recht viele ; *n.* Menge, *f.*

mark, (*money*) Mark, *f.*, (*sign*) Zeichen, *sn.*

market, Markt, *sm.** ; — **place**, Marktplatz, *sm.**

marriage, Hochzeit, *f.* ; **take in —**, Hochzeit halten mit.

master, Herr, *wm.*, Meister, *sm.*, (*teacher*) Lehrer, *sm.*

Match, Streichholz, Zündholz, Schwefelholz, *sn.*(er) ; — **seller**, das Mädchen mit den Streichhölzern.

material, Stoff, *sm.*, Material, *mn.*

matinee, Nachmittagsvorstellung, *f.*

matter, (*affair*) Sache, *f.*, (*contents*) Inhalt, *sm.*, (*subject*) Gegenstand, *sm.** ; **a — of course**, selbstverständlich ; **no —**, schadet nichts, es ist ganz gleich (5) ; **it doesn't —**, es schadet nichts, es thut keine Noth ; **what is the —**, was gibt's, was ist los ? **what is the — with you**, was fehlt dir.

may, mögen, (*can*) können, *permission*) dürfen ; *often expressed by the subjunctive alone.*

mayor, Bürgermeister, *sm.*

meal, Mahl, *sn.*, Mahlzeit, *f.*

mean, *adj.* gemein, niedrig, (*middle*) mittler ; (**in the**) **time**, mittlerweile, indessen, unterdessen ; **by no —s**, keineswegs, durchaus nicht ; **by all —s**, auf alle Fälle.

mean, *v.* meinen, bedeuten, (*will, wish*), wollen ; **—s**, *n.* Mittel ; *sn.* **—ing**, Bedeutung, *f.*

measure, Mass, *sn.*; **beyond —**, über Massen, übermässig.

meat, Fleisch, *sn.*

medicine, Medizin, Arznei, *f.*

meet, begegnen (*d.*), treffen (*a.*), (*by appointment*) zusammenkommen; **he met with an accident**, ein Unfall ist ihm begegnet; **— a welcome**, willkommen sein; *n.*, **—ing**, Versammlung, *f.*, Zusammenknuft, *sf.*

melody, Melodie, *f.*

melt, schmelzen; **— away**, verschmelzen.

member, Glied, *sn.*(er), (*of a society*) Mitglied.

memory, Gedächtnis, *sn.*, (*remembrance*) Andenken (an, *a.*), *sn.*

mention, erwähnen, (*suggest, give*) angeben.

merchant, Kaufmann, *sm.*,(er), (*plur. also* Leute).

merely, nur, bloss.

merit, *n.* Verdienst, *sn.*; *v.* verdienen.

merry, lustig, fröhlich.

message, Botschaft, *f.*, Auftrag, *sm.**

messenger, Bote, *wm.*

method, Methode, *f.*

middle, Mitte, *f.*; *adj.* mittler; **— Ages**, Mittelalter, *sn.*

midst, Mitte, *f.*; **in our —**, mitten unter uns.

mild, mild.

military, militärisch; **— service**, Militärdienst, *sm.*

milk, melken; *n.* Milch, *f.*

mill, Mühle, *f.*; **—er**, Müller, *sm.*

millionaire, Millionär, *sm.*

mind, (*spirit*) Geist, *sm.*(er), (*disposition*) Sinn, *sm.*, Gemüth, *sn.*(er), (*heart*) Herz, *nn.* (*feeling*) Gefühl, *sn.*, (*reason, sense*) Verstand, *sm.*, (*purpose*) Absicht, *f.*, (*inclination*) Neigung, *f.*, (*memory*) Gedächtnis, *sn.*; **make up one's —**, sich entschliessen; *v.* (*care for*) sich kümmern (um) (5), (*pay attention to*) Acht geben auf (*a.*); **never —**, es thut nichts; **—ful**, eingedenk (*g.*).

mineral, Mineral, *nn.* (*plur.* -ien); **— water**, Mineralwasser.

minister, (*member of government*) Minister, *sm.*, (*messenger*) Bote, *wm.*, (*preacher*) Geistlicher, (*adj. inflection*) Prediger, *sm.*

minute, minute, *f.*, (*moment*) Augenblick, *sm.*

miou, miau.

misdoer, Missethäter, *sm.*

misery, Elend, *sn.*; **the picture of —**, sehr elend; **—able**, elend.

misfortune, Unglück, *sn.*, Unfall, *sm.*,* Unglücksfall.

miss, *n.* Fräulein, *sn.*; *v.* verpassen, versäumen.

mistake, Versehen, *sn.* (*fault*) Fehler, *sm.*; **by —**, aus Versehen; **be —n**, sich irren; **make a —**, einen Fehler begehen.

mister, **Mr.**, Herr, *wm.*

mistrust, mistrauen (*d.*).

model, Muster, *sn.*

modest, bescheiden.

moist, feucht.

moment, Augenblick, *sm.*; **at the earliest possible —**, sobald wie möglich.

monarch, *wm.*

money, Geld, *sn.*(er).

monster, Ungeheuer, *sn.*

month, Monat, *sm.*

moon, Mond, *sm.*; **—light**, Mondlicht, *n.*, Mondschein, *m.*

moral, sittlich; **—ist**, Moralprediger *sm.*

more, mehr, (*additional*) noch; **another** (*—one more*) noch ein; **once —**, noch einmal; **— and —**, immer mehr; **—over**, ausserdem, überdies; **something —**, noch etwas.

morning, Morgen, *sm.*; **good —**,

guten Morgen; **in the —**, morgens, am Morgen; **the next —**, den nächsten Morgen; **this —**, heute Morgen; **to-morrow —**, Morgen früh; **— visit**, Morgenbesuch, *sm.*

mortal, sterblich; *n.* (*human being*) Mensch, *wm.*

moss, Moos, *sn.*; **— rose**, Moosrose, *f.*

most, (*superl.*) meist; **—ly**, meistens; **at —**, höchstens; **make the — of**, sich finden in (*a.*), *in adv. comparison*, recht, äusserst, u.s.w.

mother, Mutter, *sf.*; **— tongue**, Muttersprache, *f.*

motion, Bewegung, *f.*; *v.* zuwinken.

mountain, Berg, *sm.*

mouse, Maus, *sf.*

mouth, Mund, *sm.*(e, er), (*of beasts*) Maul, *sn.*(er), (*jaws*) Rachen, *sm.*, (*of a river*) Mündung, *f.*, (*opening*) Öffnung (70), *f.*; **open the — with astonishment**, den Mund vor Erstaunen aufsperren.

move, (*in chess*) Zug, *sm.**; **—ment**, Bewegung, *f.*

move, *v.* bewegen, (*stir*) rühren, (*excite*) an-, aufregen, (*from a house, etc.*) ausziehen, (*change houses*) umziehen, (— *to*) hinziehen (nach); **— about**, sich bewegen.

mow, mähen.

much, viel, sehr; **— to my joy**, zu meiner grossen Freude.

mule, Maulthier, *sn.*

murder, Mord, *sm.*; **—ous**, mörderisch.

museum, Museum, *n.* (*plur.* -en).

music, Musik, *f.*; **—ian**, Musikant, *wm.*

musket, Flinte, *f.*

muslin, Mousseline, *f.*

must, müssen.

mysterious, heimlich; **—y**, Heimlichkeit, *f.*

N.

naked, nackt, bloss.

name, Name, *wm.*; **by —**, Namens, mit Namen; **my — is**, ich heisse....

name, *v.* nennen, (*call*) heissen, (*cite*) angeben; **be —**, heissen; **—d**, genannt, geheissen, Namens, (*appointed*) bestimmt, festgesetzt.

narrow, eng, schmal.

nation, Nation, *f.*, Volk, *sn.*(er).

natural, natürlich.

nature, Natur, *f.*; **by —**, von Natur.

naughty, unartig.

near, nahe (an, *a.*), in der Nähe; **go, come —**, sich nähern (*d.*); *prep.* bei, an; **—ly**, nahe (dabei, daran); **he —ly stepped on him**, er war nahe daran, auf ihn zu treten.

neat, nett, schön, sauber.

necessary, nötig, notwendig.

neck, Hals, *sm.*,* (*back of neck*) Nacken, *sm.*; **—lace**, Halsband, *sn.*(er); **up to his —**, bis zum Hals.

need, Noth, *sf.*, (*necessity*) Nothwendigkeit, *f.*; *v.* nöthig haben, brauchen, bedürfen.

neglect, vernachlässigen; **—ful**, nachlässig.

negotiate (27), verhandeln, unterhandeln.

neighbour, Nachbar, *mm.*; **—hood**, Nachbarschaft, Gegend, Umgebung, *f.*; **—ing**, benachbart.

neither, keiner von beiden; **— .... nor**, weder....noch.

nephew, Neffe, *wm.*

net, Netz, *sn.*

never, nie, niemals; **—more**, nie wieder.

new, neu; **—s**, Nachricht, Neuigkeit, *f.*; **—spaper**, Zeitung, *f.*; **—year**, Neujahr, *sn.*; **—born**, neugeboren; **what's the —s?** was gibt's?

next, nächst.

nice, nett, niedlich, (*exact*) genau, (*taste*) fein; — and fresh, recht frisch; — and quiet, recht (schön) ruhig; —ly, (*advantageous*) (84), vortheilhaft, günstig.

niece, Nichte, *f.*

nigh, nah.

night, Nacht, *sf.*; at, by —, bei Nacht, zur Nacht, Nachts, in der Nacht; to—, heute Nacht, heute Abend; every —, jede Nacht, alle Nächte.

no, nein; *pron.* kein; —body, Niemand; —thing, nichts; —where; nirgends; for —thing, umsonst.

noble, adelig, (*in spirit*) edel; —man, Edelmann, *sm.*(er).

nod, nicken.

noise, Lärm, *sm.*, Spektakel, *sm.*

noon, Mittag, *sm.*; at —day, am hellen Tage.

nor, noch, und auch nicht.

north, Norden, *sm.*; —erly, nördlich.

nose, Nase, *f.*

not, nicht; —withstanding, ungeachtet (*g.*).

noted, berühmt (wegen).

notice, bemerken; take —, merken.

novel, Roman, *sm.* (Novelle *story*).

now, jetzt, nun; just —, soeben; —adays, heutzutage; — .. . —, bald ....bald; — and then, dann und wann.

number, Zahl, *f.*; a — of, eine Anzahl, viele, eine Menge, *f.* (83); *v.* zählen.

numerous, zahlreich.

nurse, Aufwärterin, *f.*, Kindermädchen, *sn.*; —ry, Kinderstube, *f.*

nut, Nuss, *f.*; —cracker, Nussknacker, *sm.*

O.

obedient, gehorsam.

object, Gegenstand, *sm.**; —ion, Einwand *sm.**; he has no —ion, er hat nichts dagegen.

oblige, (*compel*) zwingen; be —d to, müssen, gezwungen werden.

observe, beobachten.

obtain, erlangen, bekommen, gewinnen.

occasion Gelegenheit, *f.*, (*cause*) Veranlassung, *f.*; on one —, einmal.

occupation, (*employment*) Beschäftigung, *f.*

o'clock, Uhr, *f.*

of, von; out —, aus, (*about*) über; *sign of genitive.*

off, weg, fort; be — to, reisen (nach).

offend, beleidigen.

offer, anbieten.

office, Amt, *sn.*(er).

officer, Offizier, *sm.*

often, oftmals, häufig.

old, alt, — age, hohes Alter; — man, Greis, *sm.*

on, (of position, *parallel to, alongside of, etc.*), an; (of position, *upon, perpendicular to, etc.*), auf, (*forward*) fort, weiter, (*in advance*), voran; live —, leben von.

once, einmal; — upon a time, einmal, einst; at —, gleich, sogleich; all at —, auf einmal, plötzlich; — more, noch einmal.

one, ein; not —, kein (einziger); — by —, einzeln; — another, einander.

only, nur, allein; not — .... but also, nicht nur .... sondern auch.

open, offen, frei, (*public*) öffentlich; *v.* öffnen, (*a book*) aufschlagen, (*of a door*) aufgehen (85), (*an umbrella*) aufspannen; — wide, aufsperren.

opinion, Meinung, Ansicht, *f.*

opponent, Gegner, *sm.*

opportunity, Gelegenheit, *f.*

or, oder.

orange, Apfelsine, *f.*; —peel, Apfelsinenschale, *f.*

order, Bestellung, *f.*, Ordnung, *f.*;

— **of the day**, Tagesordnung ; —**s**, Befehl, *sm.* ; **in — to**, um .... zu.

order, *v.* bestellen, lassen, befehlen.

Oriental, morgenländisch.

origin, Ursprung, *sm.**

ornament, Schmuck, *sm.*,* Aufsatz, *sm.**

other, ander ; **an—**, ein andrer, (*one more*) noch ein ; **among — things**, unter anderm ; —**wise**, sonst.

ought, sollte ; — **to have** (=*should have*), hätte sollen.

out, draussen.

over, *prep.* über ; *adv.* (*remaining*) übrig, (*past*) vorbei, vorüber, (*yonder*) drüben ; — **again**, nochmals (28), noch einmal ; — **the wine**, beim Wein.

overcome, übermannen.

owe, schuldig sein, verdanken.

own, eigen ; *v.* besitzen, (*confess*) gestehen, bekennen.

ox, Ochs, *vcm.*

P.

pace, Schritt, *sm.*, (*gait*) Gang, *sm.**

pack (up), ein packen.

page (*of a book*), Seite, *f.*

pain, Schmerz, *mm.*

palace, Palast, *sm.*,* (*castle*) Schloss, *sn.*(er).

pale, bleich, blass ; **grow —**, erbleichen ; — **as a ghost, deathly —**, totblass.

pannier, Tragkorb, *sm.**

paper, Papier, *sn.*, (*newspaper*) Zeitung, *f.* ; — **castle**, Schloss von Papier.

pardon, verzeihen ; **ask one's —**, einen um Verzeihung bitten.

parents, Eltern (*plur.*).

park, Park, *m.* (*plur.* —s).

part, Theil, *sm.*, (*share*) Theil, *sn.* ; **for my —**, meinerseits, meines Theils, was mich betrifft ; **take —**, Theil nehmen (an, *a.*) ; —**ly**, theilweise ; **in that — of the country**, da zu Lande.

part, *v.* theilen, (*separate*) scheiden, trennen.

partake of, (*enjoy*), geniessen, (*eat*) essen.

particular, besonder, genau ; *n.* Einzelheit ; —**ly**, besonders, ins besondere.

pass, gehen, etc., (*happen*) geschehen, (*go by*) vorbeigehen, vorübergehen ; fahren (86), (*through*) durchgehen (69), (*time*) zubringen, verbringen, (*examination*) bestehen, durchkommen ; **the time —es**, die Zeit vergeht.

passage, (*across*) Überfahrt, *f.*

passenger, Passagier, *sm.*, Reisender (*adj. injection*).

passion, Leidenschaft, *f.*, Leiden (79).

pass(port), Pass, *sm.**

past, *adv.* vorbei, vorüber ; *n.* Vergangenheit, *f.*

pastor, Pastor, *mm.*

patient, geduldig ; *n.* der Kranke, (*adj. infl.*) Patient, *vcm.*

patriot, Patriot, *vcm.* ; —**ic**, patriotisch.

pattern, Muster, *sn.*

paw, Pfote, *f.*

pay, bezahlen, sich lohnen ; (*thanks, etc.*) abstatten, (*visits*) machen, abstatten ; — **attention**, Acht geben (auf, *a.*).

peace, Friede, *mm.*, (*quiet*) Ruhe ; **give —**, beruhigen ; —**able**, friedlich.

peasant, Bauer, *mm.*

pedlar, Hausierer, *sm.*

peel, Schale, *f.* ; *v.* schälen.

peep, gucken ; — **at**, begucken.

penitent, Büsser.

penny, Pfennig, *sm.*

people, Volk, *sn.*(er), (*the public*) Leute, *f. plur.* ; — **say**, man sagt ; **many — say**, viele sagen.

perfect, vollkommen, ganz.

perform, thun, leisten, verrichten,

(*of plays*) aufführen, spielen, (*carry out*) ausführen.

perfume, (*of flowers*) Duft, *sm.**

perhaps, vielleicht.

permission, Erlaubnis, *f.*

permit, erlauben (*d.*).

perplex, verwirren, verlegen machen; —ity, Verwirrung, Verlegenheit, *f.*, (*oppression, distress*) Noth, *sf.*

persecution, Verfolgung, *f.*

persist, beharren (auf, *a.*), bestehen (auf, *a.*).

person, Person, *f.*; —al, persönlich; —ality, Persönlichkeit, *f.*

persuade, überreden.

perverse, verkehrt.

physician, Arzt, *sm.**

pick, picken; — up, auflesen, aufheben, aufnehmen, (*collect*) sammeln, (*pluck, gather*) pflücken.

picture, Bild, *sn.*(er); — gallery, Bildergallerie, *f.*

piece, Stück, *sn.*; to —s, in Stücke, (*in compd. verbs*), zer-; auseinander (SI).

pious, fromm.

pipe, pfeifen; *n.* Pfeife, *f.*

pirate, Seeräuber, *sm.*

piteously, kläglich, traurig, jämmerlich.

pity, Mitleid, *sn.* (mit), (*mercy*) Erbarmen, *sn.* (mit); —ing, mitleidig; it's a —, es ist schade; *v.* Mitleid (mit)....haben, bedauern.

place, Platz. *sm.*,* (*locality*) Ort, *sm.* (e, er), (*spot, passage*) Stelle, *f.*, (*seat*) Sitz, *sm.*; *v.* setzen, stellen, legen; take —, stattfinden.

plague, plagen; *n.* Plage, *f.*

plainly, (*clearly*) deutlich, (*simply*) einfach.

plan, Plan, *sm.**; *v.* entwerfen, Pläne machen, vornehmen.

plant, Pflanze, *f.*

play, Spiel, *sn.*, (*of the stage*) Schauspiel, (*in a game of chance*) Wurf, *sm.**; — things, Spielzeug, *sn.*; *v.* spielen, (*on the stage*) aufführen.

pleasant, angenehm, freundlich.

please, gefallen (*d.*), (*satisfy*) befriedigen, (*delight*) entzücken, (*pray*) bitte; it —s me here, es gefällt mir hier.

pleased, vergnügt; — with, erfreut über (*a.*).

pleasure, Vergnügen, *sn.*, Vergnügung, *f.*, (*enjoyment*) Genuss, *sm.**

plenty, Fülle, *f.*; *adj.* reichlich, genug; the horn of —, vollauf genug.

plight, Zustand, *sm.**

plow, Pflug *sm.**; *v.* pflügen; — lands, Acker, *sm.**

pluck, pflücken; to be —ed, (*fail in examination*) durchfallen.

plum, Pflaume, *f.*

plunge, (*in water*) tauchen, hineinspringen.

P.M., Nachmittags, Nm.

pocket, Tasche, *f.*; *v.* einstecken, beistecken.

poem, Gedicht, *sn.*

poetry, Dichtkunst, *sf.*; in — too, zwar in Versen.

point, Punkt, *sm.*, (*sharp end*) Spitze, *f.*; —ed, (*sharp*) spitz.

poison, Gift, *sn.*; *v.* vergiften.

polish, poliren.

polite, höflich, galant; —ness, Höflichkeit, Galanterie, *f.*

political, politisch.

pond, Teich, *sm.*

pool, Pfuhl, *sm.*, Pfütze, *f.*, (*pond*) Teich.

poor, arm (an, *d.*).

popular, beliebt.

porridge, Haferbrei, *sm.*; — pot, Breitopf, Haferbreitopf, *sm.**

position, Stellung, *f.*

positively, unbedingt (24).

possess, besitzen ; — one's self of, sich bemächtigen (*g.*) ; —or, Besitzer, *sm.* ; —ion, Besitz, *sm.* ; take —ion of, Besitz nehmen von.

possible, möglich.

postpone, aufschieben, verschieben ; hinausschieben.

pot, Topf, *sm.*,* Töpfchen, *sn.*

potato, Kartoffel, *f.*

pound, Pfund, *sn.*

power, Kräft, *sf.*, (*strength*) Stärke, *f.*, (*might*) Macht, *sf.* ; —ful, mächtig, kräftig, stark, einflussreich.

practical, praktisch.

praise, Lob, *sn.* ; *v.* loben.

pray, beten ; (*expletive*) denn, doch (73), (*please*) bitte.

preacher, Prediger, *sm.*, Pater, Kanzelredner, *sm.*

preceding, vorig.

precious, kostbar, werthvoll, theuer.

prefer, vorziehen.

preparation, Vorbereitung, *f.*

prepare, (sich) vorbereiten (auf, *a.*), bereiten.

presence, Gegenwart, *f.* ; — of mind, Geistesgegenwart.

present, Geschenk, *sn.* ; *v.* schenken, Geschenke machen ; *adj.* jetzig ; be —, zugegen, anwesend sein ; —ly, bald.

pretence, Vorwand, *sm.**

pretend, vorgeben, sich stellen ; — to be deaf, sich taub stellen ; —ed, angeblich, vorgeblich ; —er, Heuchler, *sm.*

pretty, hübsch, schön ; *adv.* ziemlich.

prevail, herrschen.

prevent, verhindern.

price, Preis, *sm.*

prick, stechen ; — up the ears, die Ohren spitzen.

priest, Priester, *sm.*

prince, Fürst, *wm.*, Prinz, *wm.* ; — of the church, Kirchenfürst.

principal, Director, *mm.*, *in compds.* Haupt-.

prison, Gefängnis, *sn.* ; —er, Gefangener (*adj. inf.*) ; take —er, gefangen nehmen.

probable, wahrscheinlich.

proceed, weitergehen, (*arise*) herrühren (von).

proclaim, ankündigen, (*make known*) verkünden.

prodigal, verschwenderisch.

produce, (*bring forth*) hervorbringen.

professor, Professor, *mm.*

project, hervorragen, vorspringen (83).

promise, versprechen ; *n.* Versprechen, *sn.* ; keep a —, ein Versprechen halten ; —ing, hoffnungsvoll.

pronounce, aussprechen.

proof, Beweis, *sm.*

proper, (*correct*) richtig, ordentlich, (*suitable*) passend ; that is not —, das schickt sich nicht ; —ty, Eigenthum, *sn.*(er), (*possession*) Besitzthum, *sn.*(er).

proposal, Vorschlag *sm.** ; *v.* —e, vorschlagen.

protect, schützen, beschützen, (vor, *d.*, gegen) ; —ion, Schutz, *sm.*

proud, stolz (auf, *a.*).

prove, beweisen.

provide, (*care*) sorgen (für).

province, Provinz, *f.*

provoked, gereizt, unmutig.

pull, ziehen ; — up, ausziehen.

punctually, pünktlich.

punish, strafen, bestrafen ; —ment, Strafe, Vergeltung, *f.*

purpose, Absicht, *f.* ; on —, mit Absicht, absichtlich ; *v.* die Absicht haben.

put, thun, (*set*) setzen, (*place*) stellen, (*away*) hinthun (22) ; — on, (*dress*) anzie-

hen; — **out**, (*eye*) ausstecken; — **to death**, töten, — **back again**, wieder weglegen (81).

Q.

quantity, Quantität, *f.*

quarrel, Streit, Zank, *m.* (in *plur.* use Streitigkeiten, Zänkereien); *v.* zanken, streiten (um.)

quarter, Viertel, *sm.*, viertel; **a — of an hour**, eine Viertelstunde.

queen, Königin, *f.*

quench, (*thirst*) stillen, (*fire*) löschen.

question, Frage, *f.*; **ask a —**, eine Frage stellen; **the — is**, es handelt sich um.

quick, schnell, flink, geschwind.

quiet, still, ruhig; **keep —**, schweigen; **—ly**, ruhig, (*composedly*) gelassen; **in all —ness**, in aller Stille (10).

quit, verlassen.

quite, ganz, völlig.

R.

race, Geschlecht, *sn.*(er), Stamm, *sm.**

racket, Spektakel, *sm.*

raftsman, Flösser, *sm.*

rag, Lumpen, *sm.*

rage, Wuth, *f.*, (*anger*) Zorn, *sm.*

railway, Eisenbahn, *f.*; — **train**, Zug, *sm.**; — **compartment**, Koupee, *n.*

rain, Regen, *sm.*; *v.* regnen; **—y**, regnerisch.

raise, heben, aufheben, emporheben.

raisin, Rosine, *f.*

rank, (*of soldiers*) Reihe, *f.*, (*society*) Stand, *sm.*,* (*grade*) Rang, *sm.**

rapid, schnell, rasch.

rare, selten.

rate, **at any**, jedenfalls; **at a terrible —**, schrecklich schnell.

rather, lieber, (*more correctly*) vielmehr, ziemlich.

rattle, rasseln, klappern.

reach, reichen, (*arrive at*) erreichen.

read, lesen; — **aloud**, **to a person**, vorlesen, (*d.*); — **off**, ablesen; **—er**, **—ingbook**, Lesebuch, *sn.*(er).

ready, fertig, bereit, schnell; — **money**, baares Geld; **—ily**, (*willingly*) bereitwillig.

real, wirklich, (*genuine*) echt, (*true*) wahr, wahrhaft, (*essentially*) wesentlich.

realization, Verwirklichung, *f.*

reason, (*faculty*) Vernunft, *f.*, (*common sense*) Verstand, *sm.*, (*cause*) Ursache, *f.*, (*ground*) Grund, *sm.**; **for some — or other**, aus irgend einem Grunde; **by — of**, wegen, (*g.*).

receive, bekommen, erhalten, empfangen.

reckoning, Rechnung, *f.*

recognize, erkennen, (*admit*), gestehen, anerkennen, (*know*) gleich **wissen** (15).

recoil (69), zurückprallen.

recollect, sich erinnern (*g.* or an *a.*).

recommend, empfehlen.

reconcile, versöhnen; **—iation**, Versöhnung.

recover, wieder gewinnen, sich erholen (von), (*in health*) genesen; finden, holen (75); **—y** (75), *turn by*, sie wieder zu bekommen.

recruit, Rekrut, *wm.*

red, roth.

reel, Spule, *f.*

refill, wieder füllen, voll machen.

reflect, (*think*) nachdenken (über, *a.*), (*consider*) überlegen, (*of light*) zurückwerfen; **to be —ed in it**, sich darin abspiegeln; **—ion**, (*thought*) Betrachtung.

refresh, erfrischen.

refuse, verweigen, sich weigern, absagen, abschlagen.

regain, wiedergewinnen; — **one's**

feet, wieder auf die Beine kommen, aufstehen.

regard, (*mind*) achten (auf, *a.*); **as —s myself**, was mich betrifft; *n.* Hinsicht.

regular, regelmässig, ordentlich.

rein, Zügel, *sm.*

rejoice, sich freuen, erfreuen, Freude machen; **—ing**, Freude, *f.*

relate, berichten, erzählen, sich beziehen (auf, *a.*).

relative, (*relation*), Verwandter (*adj. infl.*).

release, entlassen (aus), freisetzen.

relic, Überbleibsel, *sn.*

rely, sich verlassen (auf, *a.*).

remain, bleiben, verbleiben (17), zurückbleiben; **— standing**, stehen bleiben; **—in one's place**, auf der Stelle bleiben; **—ing**, (*rest of*) übrig; **—s**, Überbleibsel, Reste.

remark, Bemerkung, *f.*; **—able**, bekannt, berühmt, merkwürdig; *v.* bemerken.

remedy, Mittel (gegen).

remember, sich erinnern (*g.*).

remind, erinnern (an. *a.*), mahnen (an, *a.*).

remove, entfernen, (weg)schicken.

repast, Essen, *n.*

repay, vergelten (68); **—ment**, Vergeltung, *f.*

repeat, wiederholen, (*recite*) hersagen; **—edly**, wiederholt.

reply, versetzen, antworten (*d.* of person, auf, *a.* to a question), erwidern.

report, Bericht, *sm.*; *v.* berichten, melden, Bericht machen, erstatten; **it is —ed**, man berichtet, sagt.

represent, darstellen, (*take the place*) vertreten; **—ative**, Vertreter, *sm.*

repulse, Abweisung, *f.*

reputation, Ruf, *sm.*, (*fame*) Ruhm, *sm.*

request, Bitte, *f.*, Verlangen, *sn.*

require, verlangen, (*demand*) fordern.

rescue, retten; *n.* Rettung, *f.*

resemble, gleichen (*d.*), ähnlich sein.

resolve, beschliessen, sich entschliessen (zu).

resound, ertönen.

resource, Hülfsmittel, *sn.*

respect, Hinsicht, Rücksicht, Achtung, *f.*; *v.* achten; **—ful**, höflich, ehrerbietig; **—fully** (*yours*), (Ihr) Ergebenst, Hochachtungsvoll.

rest, Ruhe, *f.*; *v.* ruhen, ausruhen; **— of**, übrig; **lay to —**, begraben (77).

result, Resultat, *sn.*, (*consequence*) Folge, *f.*

retire, zurückziehen, (*for sleep*) zu Bette gehen, schlafen gehen; **—d, in —ment**, zurückgezogen; **—d**, (*concealed*) verborgen.

retrace, one's steps, zurückgehen.

return, Rückkehr, Wiederkehr, *f.*; *v.* zurückkehren, (*answer*) erwidern.

revert, zurückfallen (an, *a.*).

revolt, Empörung, *f.*, Aufstand, *sm.*,* Abfall, *sm.**

rheumatism, Rheumatismus, *sm.*

ribbon, Band, *sn.*(er).

rich, reich (an, *d.*); **—es**, Reichthum, *sn.*(er).

rid, befreien (von); *adj.*, los, (*g.* or *a.*).

ride, reiten.

ridicule, spotten (über, *a.*), verspotten; **—ous**, lächerlich.

right, aufrecht, zurecht stellen; *n* Recht, *sn.*; *adj.* recht, (*correct*) richtig; **he is —**, er hat Recht; *adv.* recht, (*just*) gerade; **to the —**, (nach) rechts, zur Rechten.

ring, Ring, *sm.*; *v.* klingeln, schellen, (*bells*) läuten.

ripe, reif.

rise, steïgen, (*of the stars*) aufgehen,

(*get up*) aufstehen, (*wind*) sich erheben; — up, aufspringen (68).

rise, *n.* Steigen, *sn.*, Aufstehen, *sn.*, Aufgang, *sm.**

risk, Gefahr; run —, Gefahr laufen.

rival, Gegenkandidat, *wm.*

river, Fluss, *sm.*,* Strom, *sm.**

road, Weg, *sm.*

roar, (*beasts*) brüllen, (*water*) rauschen; — of laughter, schallendes Gelächter, *sn.*

roast, braten; *n.* Braten, *sm.*

rob, rauben, berauben.

rock, Fels, *mm.*, Felsen, *sm.*

rock, *v.* schaukeln, (*cradle*) wiegen.

roll, Rolle, *f.*; *v.* rollen; — away, wegrollen, daherjagen (83).

Romans, die Römer.

roof, Dach, *sn.*(er).

room, Zimmer, *sn.*, Stube, *f.*

root, Wurzel, *f.*

rope, Seil, *sn.* (Band).

rose, Rose, *f*; — bush, Rosenstrauch, *sm.**

rough, rauh, (*of manner*) barsch.

round, *prep.* um; *adj.* rund; *adv.* umher, herum.

royal, königlich.

rub, reiben, streichen (83).

ruby (*red*), rubinroth.

rude, (*impolite*) unhöflich, grob.

rule, Regel, *f.*; as a —, in der Regel; *v.* regiren, herrschen; —r, Herrscher, *sm.*

run, laufen, rennen, (=*be*) lauten; — away, davonlaufen, durchgehen; — around, herumlaufen; — to and fro, hin und herlaufen; — up and down, hinauf und hinunter gehen, steigen.

rush, rauschen, (*run*) stürzen, (*wind*) sausen, (*drive*) jagen; — by, vorbeisausen (23); — on, weiterjagen, rauschen.

S.

sad, traurig.

safe, sicher (vor *d.*); — and sound, frisch und gesund; —ty, Sicherheit, *f.*; in —, in Sicherheit, glücklich (70).

sail, Segel, *sn.*; — boat, Segelboot; *v.* segeln; go for a —, segeln gehen; —or, Matrose, *wm.*; he is a good —or, er ist seefest.

sake, for the — of, wegen, um.... willen.

sale, Verkauf, *sm.**; for —, zu verkaufen.

salt, Salz, *sn.*

salve, Salbe, *f.*

same (the), derselbe; at the — time, zu gleicher Zeit.

sand, Sand, *sm.*; —man, Sandmann, *sm.*(er), Traumgott, *sm.*(er), (*acc. to the Danish*) Augenschliesser.

satisfy, befriedigen; —fied, zufrieden; —faction, Zufriedenheit, *f.*

savant, Gelehrter (*adj. infl.*).

save, retten, erretten, (*economize*) sparen; —iour, Retter, *sm.*, Retterin, *f.*

savoury, (*of taste*) schmackhaft.

say, sagen, (*speak*) sprechen; be said to, sollen; — to one's self, vor sich hin sagen.

scarce, selten; —ly, kaum.

scarf, Schärpe, *f.*, (*necktie*) Kravatte, *f.*

scene, Scene, *f.*, (*drama*) Scene, *f.*, Auftritt, *sm.*; —ry, Landschaft, Umgebung, *f.*

scheme, Plan, *sm.**

scholar, Schüler, *sm.*, Gelehrter (*adj. infl.*).

school, Schule, *f.*; — work, Schularbeit, *f.*, Aufgabe, *f.*, (*lessons*) Unterricht, *sm.*

science, Wissenschaft, *f.*

scratch, kratzen; *n.* Ritz; *interj.* (83) ritsch!

scythe, Sense, *f.*

sea, See, *f.*, Meer, *sn.*; —**shore**, Seeküste, *f.*; — **fight**, Seegefecht, *sn.*; — **voyage**, Seefahrt, *f.*

seal, (be)siegeln; — **up**, versiegeln.

season, Jahreszeit, *f.*, (*society*) Saison, *f.*

seat, Sitz, *sm.*

second, Sekunde, *f.*; **in a** —, in einem Augenblick.

secret, heimlich, verschwiegen.

secure, Sicher (vor. *d.*); *v.* (*obtain*) gewinnen.

see, sehen, schauen, (*understand*) einsehen, verstehen; **go to** —, besuchen, (*notice*) bemerken, (*learn*) erfahren; — **after**, sehen nach; — **through**, verstehen.

seek, suchen (*a.* or nach); — **out**, aussuchen.

seem, scheinen, (*appear*) erscheinen.

seize, ergreifen.

seldom, selten.

self, selbst; **my**—, mich, mich selbst.

sell, verkaufen.

send, senden, schicken (nach, *for*, an, zu, *person*, nach, *place*); — **for** (*a physician*), holen lassen; — **downstairs**, hinunterschicken.

sense, Sinn (78), *sm.*, (*reason*) Vernunft, *f.*; **common** —, gesunder Menschenverstand, *sm.*

sensible, vernünftig, klug, (*clever*) gescheit, verständig.

sentence, Satz, *sm.*, (*judgment*) Urtheil, *sn.*; *v.* verurtheilen.

serious, ernsthaft, feierlich; **become** —, schlimm werden.

sermon, Predigt, *f.*

serve, dienen (*d.*); —**ice**, Dienst, *sm.*; **render** —, Dienste leisten; **be in** —, in Diensten stehen; **be of** —, nützlich, von Nutzen sein; **dinner** —, Tafelservice, Porzellan (83); —**ant**, Diener, *sm.*

set, setzen, (*place*) stellen; — **up**, aufstellen; — **up a howl**, zu heulen anfangen.

several, mehrere.

severe, streng.

shadow, Schatten, *sm.*

shake, schütteln, (*cause to tremble*) erschüttern (79).

shall, sollen, (*future aux.*) werden.

sham fights, to have, Krieg führen spielen (86).

shame, Scham, *f.*, Beschämung (79), (*disgrace*) Schande, *f.*

shape, Gestalt, *f.*, Form, *f.*, Erscheinung, *f.* (77).

share, Theil, *sn.*; *v.* theilen, zu Theil werden.

sharp, scharf, (*pointed*) spitz, (*cunning*) schlau; *v.* —**en**, schärfen, (*pencil*) spitzen; —**ness**, Schlauheit, *f.*

sheep, Schaf, *sn.*; —**shanks**, Hammelswade, *f.*

shine, scheinen, glänzen, blicken (4); —**upon**, bescheinen; —**ing**, glänzend.

ship, Schiff, *sn.*

shirt, Hemd, *nn.*

shiver, zittern (vor, *d.*).

shoot, schiessen.

shop, Laden, *sm.**

shore, Ufer, *sn.*, Küste, *f.*

short, kurz, klein, (*crustily*) barsch; —**ribs**, Kurzrippen.

shoulder, Schulter, *f.*; *v.* —**arms**, Gewehr schultern.

shout, rufen, schreien, jauchzen.

show, zeigen, (*prove*) beweisen; — **out of the door**, zur Thür geleiten; — **window**, Schaufenster.

shower, Regen, *sm.*, Schauer, *f.*, Regenguss, *sm.*; **a heavy** —, ein ordentlicher Platzregen.

shut, schliessen, zumachen; — **up**, einschliessen.

shy, scheu; *v.* scheuen(vor, *d.*), scheu werden.

sick, krank; **the —**, der Kranke; **take —**, krank werden; **make —**, krank machen.

side, Seite, *f.*; **—ways**, zur Seite (81), seitwärts; **by the — of a river**, an einem Flusse (75); **—walk**, Trottoir.

sight, Gesicht, *sn.*, (*view*) Anblick, (*power of vision*) Seekraft, *sf.*

sign, Zeichen *sn.*, (*nod*) Wink, *sm.*

significance, Bedeutung, *f.*; **—cantly**, bedeutungsvoll.

silence, Schweigen, *sn.*, Stille *f.*; **call for —**, Stille gebieten.

silk, Seide, *f.*; **— material**, Seidenstoff.

silver, Silber, *n.*; *adj.* silbern.

similar, ähnlich.

simple, einfach, schlicht.

sing, singen.

single, einzig; **—gly**, einzeln, allein.

sink, sinken.

sir, mein Herr.

sister, Schwester, *f.*

sit, sitzen; **— down**, sich hinsetzen.

situated, gelegen (an, *d.*); **—ion**, Lage *f.*, Stellung *f.*

skill, Geschicklichkeit *f.*; **—ed**, geschickt, tüchtig, geübt (67); **—ful**, klug, geschickt.

sky, Himmel, *sm.*

slate, Schiefer, *sm.*, (*for school*)(Schiefer) tafel, *f.*; **— pencil**, Griffel, *sm.*

sleep, Schlaf, *m.*; *v.* schlafen; **fall a—**, einschlafen; **go to —**, schlafen gehen; **put to —**, einschläfern, in den Schlaf bringen.

sleigh, Schlitten, *sm.*

slip, schlüpfen, ausgleiten, glitschen; **— away**, sich fortschleichen; **— behind**, sich schleichen hinter (80).

slipper, Pantoffel, *mm.*

slope (*decided*), kräftiger Schwung (81).

slow, langsam.

sly, schlau, listig.

small, klein, gering, (*lowly*) niedrig.

smell, Geruch, *sm.*; *v.* riechen (an, *d.*), (*flowers*) duften; **— of**, riechen (nach).

smile, lächeln; *n.* Lächeln, *sn.*

smoke, Rauch, *sm.*; *v.* rauchen.

snow, Schnee, *sm.*; **—flake**, Schneeflocke, *f.*; **—white**, schneeweiss; **— fell fast**, es schneite stark.

snuff, Schnupftabak, *sm.*; **—box**, Schnupftabaksdose, *f.*

snug, gut gebaut (27).

so, so, (*it*) es, (*therefore*) also, deshalb, (*in such a way, etc.*) auf die Weise, in der Weise, derart, u. s. w.; *often untranslated*; **— as**, um; **— that**, dass, um dass, damit.

sociable, gesellig; **—ety**, Gesellschaft, *f.*, (*a union*) Verein, *sm.*

sociology, Kulturgeschichte, *f.* (?).

soft, weich, (*gentle, low*) sanft, leise, sachte.

soldier, Soldat, *wm.*, Kriegsmann, *sm* (er); **—piece**, Soldatenstück, *sn.*

solemn, feierlich.

soliloquy, Selbstgespräch, *sn.*

some, (*quantity*) ein wenig, etwas, (*a, one*) irgend ein, (*partitive*) untranslated, (*about*) ungefähr, etwa, (*a few*) einige, mehrere, ein paar; **—one, —body**, (irgend) jemand; **—thing**, etwas; **— thing else**, sonst was, sonst etwas; **— time**, einst, einige Zeit; **—times**, oft, zuweilen; **—what**, etwas, einigermassen; **—where** irgendwo.

son, Sohn, *sm.**

song, Lied, *sn.*(er), Sang, *sm.*,* Gesang, *sm.**

soon, bald; **—er**, eher, früher, (*rather*) lieber; **— est**, erst, frühest; **as — as**, sobald als; **no — er**, nicht eher, kaum ... als.

sorrow, Leid, *mn.*, Kummer, *sm.*

sorry, traurig; **I am very —**, es thut mir sehr leid (um).

sort, Art, Sorte, *f.*; **what — of**, was für; **all —s of**, allerlei, allerhand.

soul, Seele, *f.*; **— of kindness**, die Güte selbst.

sound, Ton, *sm.*,* (*noise*) Geräusch, *sn.*; *v.* klingen, tönen.

soup, Suppe, *f.*

south, Süden, *sm.*; **—ern**, südlich.

span, (*of horses*) Gespann, *sn.*

Spaniard, Spanier, *sm.* **—ish**, spanisch.

spare, sparen, (*do without*) entbehren, (*have over*) übrig haben, (*let have, give*) schenken.

spark, Funke, *mm.*

speak, sprechen, (*give an address*) eine Rede halten; **— to**, anreden; **— about**, (*discuss*) besprechen.

special, besonder.

spectacle, Anblick, *sm.*

speech, Sprache, *f.*, (*address*) Rede, *f.*, (*halten*) Worte (73).

speed, Eile, *f.*, Tempo.

spell, buchstabiren; *n.* (*magic*) Zauber, *sm.*

spend, (*money*) ausgeben, (*time*) zubringen, verbringen.

spin, spinnen; **—ning wheel**, Spinnrad, *sn.*(er).

spirit, Geist, *sm.*(er), (*courage*) Muth, *sm.*, Feuer, *sn.*

spite, in — of, trotz, ungeachtet.

splendid, ausgezeichnet, prächtig, prachtvoll.

spoil, verderben, (*turn wrong*) verdrehen (82), (*confuse*) verwirren (82), (*of children*) verwöhnen.

sponge, Schwamm, *sm.**

spool, Spule, *f.*

spoon, Löffel, *sm.*

spot, Stelle (69), *f.*, Fleck, *sm.*

sprain, verrenken.

spread, verbreiten, ausbreiten.

spring, Frühling, *sm.*, Frühjahr, *sn.*, (*of water*) Quelle, *f.*

spring, *v.*, springen; **— up, to one's feet**, aufspringen.

sprinkle, (*scatter*) streuen.

spur, Sporn, *m.* (*pl.* Sporen); *v.* ausspornen.

squeak, quiecken.

squeeze, drücken, pressen.

stair, (*step*) Stufe, *f.*, (*a flight*) Treppe, *f.*; **down —s**, unten, (*motion*) nach unten, herunter, hinunter; **up —s**, oben, (*motion*) nach oben, herauf, hinauf.

stamp, stampfen.

stand, stehen, (*last*) dauern, (*bear*) ertragen, aushalten; **—ers by**, Zuschauer; **come to a —**, anhalten.

star, Stern, *sm.*; **falling —**, Sternschnuppe, *f.*

stare, starren; **— at**, anstarren, (*fam.*) angaffen.

start, (*de art*) abgehen, aufbrechen; **— out**, (*begin*) anfangen.

state, (*rank*) Stand *sm.*,* (*condition*) Lage *f.*, Zustand, *sm.*, (*land*) Staat, *mm.*

state, *v.* (*determine*) festsetzen, (*mention*) angeben.

station, (*railway*) Bahnhof, *sm.**

statue, Standbild, *sn.*(er).

stay, bleiben, verweilen.

steady one's self, sich stützen (auf, *a.*).

steal, stehlen (*d. of pers.*); **— up**, sich heran schleichen.

steam, Dampf *sm.**; *v. tr.* dämpfen, *intr.* dampfen.

steep, (*looking up*) steil, (*looking down*) jäh.

steeple, (Kirchen) thurm, *sm.**

stem, Stiel, *sm.*, (*stalk*) Halm, *sm.*

step, Schritt, *sm.*, (*of stairs*), Stufe *f.*

step, *v.* treten, schreiten; **— up**, hervortreten; **— up to one**, auf einen zutreten.

stick, Stock, *sm.**; *v.* stecken, (*glue*) kleben; — **fast**, fest bleiben, setzen (82), stecken bleiben (86).

stiff, steif; **in the —ness of death**, tot und steif.

still, still, ruhig, (*however*) jedoch; *adv.* noch, noch immer (14).

stir, rühren, regen; **—ring**, unruhig auf den Beinen (22).

stocking, Strumpf, *sm.*,* Socke *f.*; **in — feet**, auf Socken.

stomach, Magen, *sm.*

stone, Stein, *sm.*

stop, *tr.* aufhalten, *intr.* anhalten, stehen bleiben, (*cease*) aufhören, (*hold*) fest halten; — **up**, zustopfen, verstopfen; **—ping place**, Aufenthalt, *sm.*

store, (*shop*) Laden, *sm.*,* (*plenty*) Fülle, *f.*; **be in — for**, warten auf (*a.*).

storm, Sturm, *sm.*,* (*of a fortress, etc.*) Erstürmung, *f.*

story, Geschichte, *f.*, (*tale*) Erzählung, *f.*, (*fairytale*), Märchen, *sn.*, (*lie*) Lüge, *f.*, (*short* —) Novelle, *f.*; **a — teller**, Geschichtenerzähler, *sm.*

story, (*of a house*) Stockwerk, *sn.*, Etage, *f.*; **two —**, zweistöckig.

stove, Ofen, *sm.**

straight, gerade; **— before, ahead**, gerade aus.

strain, (*put forth effort*) anstrengen.

strait, eng; *n.* Enge, *f.* (*fig.*) Noth, *sf.*, Verlegenheit, *f.*, Klemme, *f.*; **in this —**, in dieser Noth.

strange, fremd, (*unknown*) unbekannt, (*peculiar*) sonderbar, wunderbar; **a —r**, ein Fremder (*adj. infl.*).

straw, Stroh, *sn.* *W.*

streak, Strich, *sm.*, Streifen, *sm.*; — **of fire**, Lichtstreifen.

stream, (*brook*) Bach, *sm.*,* (*river*) Fluss, *sm.*,* (*large* —) Strom, *sm.**

street, Strasse, *f.*

strength, Stärke, *f.*, (*force*) Kraft, *sf.*, (*might*) Macht, *sf.*

stretch, strecken, ausstrecken, (*extend*) sich erstrecken.

strict, streng, (*exact*) genau.

strike, schlagen, (*hit*) treffen, (*a match*) anzünden, (an)streichen (83), (*occur to*) einfallen, (*surprise*) auffallen.

string, Schnur, *sf.*, Faden, *sm.**

strong, stark, kräftig; **be a — contrast**, auffallend abstechen; **—ly marked**, stark, starkknochig.

struggle, sich anstrengen, (*fight*) kämpfen, ringen; *n.* Anstrengung, *f.*, Kampf, *sm.**

stubborn, hartnäckig.

student, Student, *wm.*; *v.* studiren, lernen.

study, Studium, *n.* (*plur.* Studien), (*room*) Studirzimmer, *sn.*

stuff, Stoff, *sm.*, (*nonsense*) dummes Zeug, *sn.*, Unsinn, *sm.*; *v.* füllen, stopfen.

stupid, dumm.

style, Stil, *sm.*; **—ish**, fein, elegant; **I am —d**, ich heisse.

subject, *adj.* unterworfen, (*to rule*) unterthan, (*exposed*) ausgesetzt; *n.* Unterthan, *mm.*, (*matter*) Gegenstand, *sm.*,* Ding, *sn.*; **in —ion**, unterworfen.

subtle, fein, schlau (78).

succeed, glücken, gelingen, (*impers. d.*), (*follow*) nachfolgen (*d.*).

success, Erfolg, *sm.*; **—ful**, erfolgreich.

such, solch, so; **— as**, wie; **— a book**, solch ein Buch, ein solches Buch, so ein Buch.

sudden, plötzlich, (*quick*) rasch.

suffer, leiden (an, *d.*), (*endure*) ertragen, (*allow*) erlauben.

sugar, Zucker, *sm.*

suggest, eingeben, die Vermutung aussprechen, (*propose*) vorschlagen; **—ion**, Vorschlag, *sm.*,* Wink, *sm.*

suit, passen (*d.*), (*please*) gefallen (*d.*).

sum, Summe, *f.*, (*example in Arithme-*

tic) Rechenexempel, *sn.*; — **of money**, Geldsumme.

summer, Sommer, *sm.*; — **season**, Sommerzeit, *f.*; —**house**, Laube, *f.*

summon, (*law*) citiren, vorladen; — **courage**, Muth fassen.

sun, Sonne, *f.*: —**ny**, sonnig; — **shine**, Sonnenchein, *sm.*

sup, Abendbrod essen; —**per**, Abendbrod, Abendessen, *sn.*

suppose, vermuthen, glauben (*d.*); —**d**, —**ing**, vorausgesetzt dass; **I** —, wohl.

sure, sicher, (*certainly*) gewiss, (*convinced*) überzeugt, (*truly*) wahrhaftig; **to be** —, zwar.

surprise, überraschen, (*astonish*) erstaunen; *n.* Überraschung, *f.*, Erstaunen, *sn.*

surround, umgeben, rings um.... stehen; —**ing country**, Umgegend, *f.*; —**ings**, Umgebung, *f.*

survive, überleben.

suspect, argwöhnen, im Verdacht haben.

suspicion, Verdacht, *sm.*, (*premonition*) Ahnung, *f.*

swallow, schlucken, verschlucken (29); *n.* Schluck, *sm.*

swan, Schwan, *sm.**

swear, schwören (auf, *a.*), betheuern (71), (*curse*) fluchen.

sweet, süss.

swell, schwellen, anwachsen.

swim, schwimmen.

sword, Schwert, *sn.*(er).

syllable, Silbe, *f.*; **final** —, Endsilbe.

sylph, Sylphe, *f.*

T.

table, Tisch, *sm.*; — **cloth**, Tischtuch, *sn.*(er).

tail, Schwanz, *sm.**

take, nehmen, (*medicine, collect money, — a town*) einnehmen, (*accept*) annehmen, (*seize*) ergreifen, (*lead*) führen, (*of time*) dauern; — **amiss**, übel nehmen, verdenken (*d.*); — (**very good**) **care**, sich (recht) in Acht nehmen; — **down** (82), herunterholen; — **one's eyes off**, die Augen wegwenden; — **flight**, die Flucht ergreifen; — **for**, halten für; — **off**, (*clothes*) ausziehen.

tale, Erzählung, *f.*, Geschichte, *f.*; **fairy** —, Märchen, *sn.*

talk, sprechen, reden, (*fam.*) schwatzen, plaudern; *n.* Gespräch, *sn.*

tall, hoch, (*of persons*) gross.

taper, Licht, *sn.*(er), Kerze, *f.*

tart, Pastete, *f.*, Torte, *f.*

task, Aufgabe, *f.*

taste, *tr.* kosten, *intr.* schmecken.

tavern, Wirthshaus, *sn.*(er).

tea, Thee, *sm.*

tear, reissen, zerreissen; — **in two**, entzwei reissen.

tear, Thräne, *f.*

teem, wimmeln.

tell, (*narrate*) erzählen, (*say*) sagen, (*order*) befehlen, (*announce*) melden, mittheilen.

tempt, (*lead astray*) verführen, (*coax*) locken, verlocken.

tender, rührend (79).

term, Semester, *sn.*; Ausdruck, *sm.*,* (74) Wort, *sn.*(e, er).

terrible, fürchterlich, schrecklich, gewaltig.

terror, Schreck, *sm.*

testify, bezeugen.

testimonial, Zeugnis, *sn.*

Thaler, Thaler, *sm.* (= three marks, about 75 cents).

than, als; **more** —, mehr als.

thank, danken (*d.*); — **you**, danke (Ihnen); —**s**, Dank, *sm.*; **return** —**s**, sich bedanken.

that, *pron.*, der, dieser, jener, derjenige ; *conj.* dass; **so —**, so dass; **in order —**, damit ; **of —**, daran, davon, u.s.w.

the, der ; — .... —, je .... desto, um so.

theatre, Theater, *sn.*

theft, Diebstahl, *sm.**

then, *adv.* dann, (*at that time*)damals, (*therefore*) also ; **now and —**, dann und wann ; **—ce**, dannen, von dannen.

there, *adv.* da, dort, (*motion*) dahin, u. s. w.; **over —**, da drüben, dort ; **—fore**, also, daher, darum, deshalb, deswegen ; **—upon**, darauf ; **—at**, dabei, darüber.

thick, dick.

thin, dünn, (*lean*) mager.

thing, Ding, *sn.*, Sache, *f.*; *often untranslated* ; **among other —s**, unter anderem.

think, denken (an, *a.*), .(*suppose*) meinen, finden, (*remember*) sich erinnern (*g.*), (*recall*) sich besinnen (auf, *a.*), (*consider*) halten für.

thirst, *sm.*; **—y**, dürstig.

this, der, dieser ; **of —**, davon ; **to —**, daran, *f.*

thorough, gründlich, vollständig ; **—ly**, gänzlich, durch und durch.

though, obgleich, doch, jedoch, aber ; **as —**, als ob, als wenn.

thought, Gedanke, *mm.* ; **after brief —**, nach kurzem Bedenken;**—less**, nachlässig ; **—lessly**, unbesonnen ; **take — for**, sorgen für.

thousand, tausend ; **—s of**, viele (7).

threat, Drohung, *f.*; **—en**, drohen.

throne, Thron, *sm.*; **speech from the —**, Thronrede, *f.*

through, *adv.* durch, hindurch; *prep.* durch ; **—out**, durchaus.

throw, Wurf, *sm.** ; *v.* werfen ; **— away**, wegwerfen, schlendern.

thumb, Daumen, *sm.*

thus, so, also, auf diese Weise.

tie, binden, knüpfen ; **— on**, anbinden an (*a.*).

tight, dicht, (*firm*) fest, (*narrow*) eng.

tile, Ziegel, *sm.*

till, *conj.* bis ; **not —**, erst als; *prep.* bis, bis zu ; **not —**, erst.

time, Zeit, *f.*, (*period of —*) Weile (14) *f.*; **— after —**, von Zeit zu Zeit ; **some — ago**, vor kurzem, neulich ; **all the —**, die ganze Zeit, während der ganzen Zeit ; **at the same —**, dabei, zu gleicher Zeit ; **(for) some —**, eine Zeit, (*repetition*) -mal ; **at that —**, damals, dann ; **—ly**, **in good —**, zeitig, rechtzeitig, zur rechten Zeit ; **at the —**, zur Zeit (*g.*)

tin, Zinn, *sn.*; **—soldier**, Zinnsoldat, *wm.*

tiny, klein, winzig.

tired, müde ; **dead —**, todmüde ; **— to death**, zu Tode ermüdet ; **— of** (*weary of*) satt sein (*g.*), satt haben.

to, *prep.*, *very frequently rendered by the dative*, (*person*) zu, (*place*) nach; (*in contrast*), mit, von, gegen ; in, an, auf, nach ; **up —**, bis zu, bis an, bis auf, bis in, (*numbers*) bis ; **— the country**, auf das Land ; **— and fro**, hin und her, auf und ab.

toast, (*bread*) Toast, *sm.*, (*of health*) Gesundheit, *f.*, Wohl, *sn.*; *v.*, eine Gesundheit ausbringen.

to-day, heute.

toe, Zehe, *f.* ; **on tip —**, auf den Zehen, Fussspitzen.

together, zusammen.

to-morrow, morgen ; **—morrow morning**, morgen früh ; **the day after —morrow**, übermorgen.

toll, Zoll, *sm.**

tone, Ton, *sm.**

tongue, Zunge, *f.*

too, auch, zu(nah).

tooth, Zahn, *sm.**

top, (*summit*) Gipfel, *sm.*, (*of a tree*) Wipfel, *sm.*, (*point*) Spitze, *f.*

touch, rühren, berühren, anrühren.

towards, (*direction*) nach, nach.... hin, (*persons*) (auf)....zu, (*number*) gegen.

tower, Thurm, *sm.**

town, Stadt, *sf.*; — **hall**, Rathhaus, *sn.*(er) (90); **down** —, in die Stadt, zur Stadt, gehen; — **mouse**, Stadtmaus, *sf.*; — **bell**, Stadtglocke, *f.*

toy, Spielzeug, *sn.*

trace, Spur, *f.*; *v.* (*follow up*) verfolgen, nachgehen, nachspüren, (*draw*) Zeichnen.

trade, (*commerce*) Handel, *sm.*, (*business*) Geschäft, *sn.*; *v.* handeln; —**sman**, Handelsmann, Geschäftsmann, *sm.*(er).

train, (*railway*) Zug, *sm.*,* (*dress*) Schleppe, *f.*; *v.* (*the mind*) bilden, (*persons*) erziehen.

transparent, durchsichtig.

travel, reisen; *n.* Reise, *f.*; —**ler**, Reisender (*adj. ingl.*); —**ling bag**, Reisetasche.

treachery, Verrath, *sm.*

tread, treten.

treason, Verrath, *sm.*; **high** —, Hochverrath.

treasure, Schatz, *sm.**

treat, (*as a physician*) behandeln; — **of**, handeln von; — **with**, unterhandeln mit.

tree, Baum, *sm.**

tremble, zittern.

tribute, Tribut, *sm.*

trick, Streich, *sm.*, (*deceit*) Trug, *sm.*

trifle, Kleinigkeit, *f.*

triumph, triumphiren; *n.* Triumph, *sm.*

troop, Schaar, *f.*, (*troups*) Truppe, *f.*; — **of mice**, Mäuseschaar.

trouble, Mühe, *f.*, (*care*) Kummer, *sm.*; *v.* (*disturb*) stören, (*cause labor*) Mühe machen, (*disquiet*) beunruhigen; —**one's self**, sich (*d.*), Mühe machen, (*care, worry about*) sich bekümmern (um); **be** —**d**, (*suffer*) leiden (an, *d.*).

true, wahr, (*faithful*) treu; **it is** —, zwar, freilich; —**ly**, wahrhaftig; **yours** —**ly**, Ihr ergebener, Ergebenst (17).

trust, Vertrauen, *sn.* (auf, in, *a.*), (*faith*) Glaube, *mm.*; *v.* vertrauen, (*d. or* auf, in, *a.*), trauen (*d.*), zutrauen (*d.*), (*hope*) hoffen, (*believe*) glauben (*d.*), (*rely on*) sich verlassen (auf, *a.*).

truth, Wahrheit, *f.*; —**ful**, ehrlich, wahrhaft.

try, versuchen, (*test*) probiren, untersuchen, auf die Probe stellen, (*will, wish*) wollen.

tumble, fallen, herunterpurzeln (82), wühlen (81).

tune, Melodie, Weise, *f.*

tunnel, Tunnel, *sm.*(*pl.*—*s*).

turn, drehen, wenden, umwenden, (*translate*) übersetzen, (*transform*) verwandeln; — **around**, sich wenden; — **back**, umkehren; — **to one's account**, für sich verwenden; — **into**, zu ... werden; **by** —**s**, wechselweise, der Reihe nach; **three** —**s**, dreimal gezogen.

U.

ugly, hässlich.

umbrella, Regenschirm, *sm.*; **open, shut an** —, einen Regenschirm auf-, abspannen.

uncertain, unsicher, ungewiss, kitzelig (84).

uncle, Oheim, *sm.*, Onkel, *sm.*

uncomfortably, unbequem.

uncommon, ungewöhnlich, selten.

unconscious, unbewusst.

under, *prep.* unter; *adv.* unter, hinunter, darunter.

understand, verstehen, (*comprehend*) begreifen.

undertake, unternehmen; —**ing**, Unternehmung, *f.*

unfortunate, unglücklich ; —**ly** unglücklicherweise, zum Unglück, leider (25) ; **an** —, ein Unglücklicher (*adj. infl.*).

uniform, Uniform, *f.*

uninvited, uneingeladen.

union, Verbindung, *f.*

unite, (ver)einigen ; —**y**, Einigkeit, Einheit, *f.*

University, Universität, *f.*; **attend the** —, auf der Universität studiren.

unkindness, Unfreundlichkeit, *f.*

unknown, unbekannt, (*not heard of*) unerhört.

until, see **till**.

untuned, verstimmt.

unwilling, ungern ; **be** —, nicht wollen.

up, *adv.* oben, (*motion, direction*) auf, herauf, hinauf ; — **and down**, auf und nieder, auf und ab ; *prep.* auf, hinauf, herauf, (*upwards*) aufwärts, in die Höhe ; —**set**, umwerfen, umstürzen ; **hunt** —, aufsuchen ; **sit** —, aufrecht sitzen (28) ; —**braid**, vorwerfen (*d.*), Vorwürfe machen (*d.*).

upon, auf, see **on**.

usage, Gebrauch, *sm.*,* (*custom*) Sitte, *f.*

use, Gebrauch, *sm.*,* (*advantage*) Nutzen, *sm.*, (*custom*) Gewohnheit, *f.* ; **make** — **of**, Gebrauch machen von ; **be of** —, nützlich sein, von Nutzen sein, helfen ; **of what** — **is it?** was hilft es? —**ful**, nützlich ; —**less**, unnütz ; **lose the** — **of one's eyes**, blind werden, die Seekraft verlieren.

use, *v.* gebrauchen ; **be** —**d to it**, daran gewöhnt sein ; **he** — **to visit me**, er pflegte mich zu besuchen, er besuchte mich früher.

usual, gewöhnlich.

Utopia, Utopien, *n.*

utter, aussprechen, hervorbringen, ausstossen, ausrufen.

utterly, ganz und gar.

V.

vain, eitel, (*unsuccessful*) vergeblich ; **in** —, vergeblich, vergebens, umsonst (15).

valise, Reisetasche, *f.*

valley, Thal, *sn.*(er).

valor, Tapferkeit, *f.*

value, schätzen ; —**able**, werth, werthvoll.

vanish, verschwinden.

vegetable, Pflanze, *f.* (*to eat*) Gemüse, *sn.*

veil, Schleier, *sm.*, (*gauze*) Flor, *sm.**

venture, wagen.

very, sehr ; **that** —, derselbe ; **his true and** — **child** (79), wahrhaftig sein eignes Kind.

vessel, Schiff, *sn.*, Fahrzeug, *sn.*

vex, (*anger*) ärgern, (*plague*) plagen ; —**ed**, verdriesslich (über, *a.*) ; **get** — **ed**, sich ärgern.

victor, Sieger, *sm.* ; —**y**, Sieg, *sm.*

view, Aussicht, *f.*, (*purpose*) Absicht, *f.*, (*opinion*) Meinung, *f.*, Einsicht (26).

view, *v.* ansehen, betrachten.

village, Dorf, *sn.*(er).

violent, gewaltsam, heftig, gewaltthätig.

violin, Geige, *f.*

visit, Besuch, *sm.* ; *v.* besuchen, bereisen (21) ; **pay a** —, Besuch machen, abstatten.

voice, Stimme, *f.*

vow, Gelübde, *sn.* ; *v.* geloben.

voyage, Reise, *f.* ; — **of discovery**, Entdeckungsreise.

W.

waddle, watscheln.

wag, wedeln ; — **the tail**, mit dem Schwanz wedeln.

waggon, Wagen, *sm.*

wail, wehklagen, jammern.

waist, Taille, *f.*

wait, warten (auf), *a.*); — **on**, aufwarten (*d.*).

waitingroom, Warteraum, *sm.**

wake, *intr.* wachen; —**up**, aufwachen, erwachen, *tr.* wecken.

walk, gehen, zu Fuss gehen, (*for pleasure*) spaziren gehen; *n.* Gang, Spaziergang, *sm.*; **fifteen minutes'** — **from here**, eine Viertelstunde von hier.

wall, (*outside*) Mauer, *f.*, (*inside*) Wand, *sf.*

wander, wandern; — **about**, umherschweifen.

want, (*need*) nöthig haben, bedürfen, (*wish*) wollen, wünschen; *n.* (*wish*) Wunsch, *sm.*,* (*need*) Bedürfnis, *sn.*, (*lack*) Mangel, *sm.**; **for** — **of**, aus Mangel an (*d.*).

war, Krieg, *sm.*; **carry on** —, Krieg führen.

warrior, Krieger, *sm.*, Kriegsmann, *sm.*(er).

warm, warm, (*zealous*) eifrig, (*fervent*) innig; *v.* wärmen, *intr.* sich erwärmen.

warn, warnen (vor. *d.*), (*exhort*) ermahnen; —**ing**, Warnung, *f.*

wash, waschen, abwaschen; —**ing**, Wäsche, *f.*

waste, (*lay w.*) verwüsten, (*squander*) verschwenden, (*time*) vergeuden.

watch, (*guard*) bewachen, (*take care of*) Acht geben auf (*a.*), (*observe*) beobachten; *n.* (*timepiece*) Taschenuhr, *f.*; —**man**, Wächter.

water, Wasser, *sn.*, (in *plur.* use Gewässer).

wave, Welle, *f.*, (*large w.*) Woge, *f.*

wax, Wachs, *sn.*

way, Weg, *sm.*, (*direction*) Richtung, *f.*, (*distance*) Strecke, *f.*, (*manner*) Weise, *f.*, (*means*) Mittel, *sn.*; **a long** — **off**, weit entfernt; **in some** —, irgendwie, auf irgend eine Weise.

weak, schwach; —**ly**, schwächlich; —**ness**, Schwäche, *f.*; —**ness of will**, Willensschwäche, *f.*

weal, Wohl, *sn.*; — **th**, Reichthum, *sn.*(er).

weapon, Waffe, *f.*

wear, tragen, anhaben, (*last*) halten; — **out**, abtragen, (*exhaust*) erschöpfen, (von).

weary, müde; —**ied**, ermüdet, müde (von).

weasel, Wiesel, *sn.*

weather, Wetter, *sn.*

week, Woche, *f.*

weep, weinen (*for* um; *at* über *a.*).

weigh, wiegen; —**t**, Gewicht, *sn.*; —**ty**, wichtig.

welcome, willkommen; *v.* bewillkommen (*wk.*).

well, Brunnen, *sm.*

well, *adv.* wohl, (recht, sehr) gut, wohl; **as** — **as**, sowohl als auch so gut wie ....; **as** —, auch; *adj.* wohl gesund; *interj.*, nun, wohlan.

west, Westen, *sm.*, nach Westen; —**erly**, westlich.

wet, nass; *v.* nass machen; *n.* Nässe, *f.*

what, was, welcher; — **kind, sort of**, was für ein.

wheat, Weizen, *sm.*; — **stalk**, Weizenhalm, *sm.*

wheel, Rad, *sn.*(er).

when, *adv.* wann; *conj.* als; —**ever**, wenn, wenn auch; — **ce**, woher, (*wherefore*) weshalb; — **asked**, gefragt; — (=*whereupon*) worauf.

where, *adv.* wo, (*whither*) wohin; **from** —, woher; — **as**, (*since*) da, weil, (*on the other hand*) während; —**ver**, wo auch immer; —**upon**, worauf.

whether, ob.

which, der, welcher; — **ever**, welcher auch immer, welcher nur immer.

while, *n.* Weile, *f.*; **a little** — **ago**, vor langer Zeit, vor Kurzem; **once in a**

—, dann und wann; **for a —**, eine Zeit lang; *conj.* (*whilst*) indem, während, und (12).

whirl, wirbeln, (*turn*) drehen: **— around**, umdrehen.

whirr! Schnurr!

whisper, flüstern.

white, weiss.

whither, wohin.

who, wer, welcher; **—ever**, wer nur (auch) immer.

whole, ganz, (*sound*) gesund; **—ly**, gänzlich, durchaus.

why, warum, weshalb.

wicked, böse, schlecht.

wide, weit, (*broad*) breit; **—n**, erweitern.

widow, Wittwe, *f.*

wife, Frau, *f.*, Gattin, *f.*, Gemahlin, *f.*; Weib, *sn.*(er).

will, Wille, *mm.*; *v.* wollen; **—ing**, gern, bereit, bereitwillig.

win, gewinnen.

wind, Wind, *sm.*

wind, winden, wenden, (*of a watch*) aufziehen, (*a reel*) schnurren.

window, Fenster, *sn.*

wine, Wein, *sm.*

wing, Flügel, *sm.*

winter, Winter, *sm.*

wisdom, Weisheit, *f.*

wish, wünschen, (*will*) wollen; **—for**, sich (*d.*) wünschen (*a.*).

wit, Witz, *sm.*, (*sense*) Verstand, *sm.*; **at one's —s end**, ausser sich, sich (*d.*) nicht zu helfen wissen.

witch, Hexe.

with, mit, (*cause*) vor (*d.*), (*in spite of*) trotz, (*near*) bei, (*among*) unter; **—out**, ohne, (*outside*) ausserhalb; *adv.* draussen, aussen; **— in**, *adv.* innen, drinnen; *prep.* innerhalb.

withdraw, zurückziehen, sich entfernen.

withstand, widerstehen (*d.*)

witness, Zeuge, *wm.*; *v.* bezeugen, mit ansehen.

wolf, Wolf, *sm.**

woman, Frau, *f.*, Weib, *sn.*(er), (*lady*) Dame, *f.*

wonder, Wunder, *sn.*, (*astonishment*) Verwunderung, *f.*; **— ful**, wundervoll, wunderbar; *v.* sich wundern (über, *a.*); **I — if**, ich möchte wissen ob.

woo, werben, freien (um).

wood, Holz, *sn.*(er), (*forest*) Wald, *sm.*(er); **in the —s**, im Walde; **—en**, hölzern; **—en shoes**, Holzpantoffel, *mm.*

wool, Wolle, *f.*

word, Wort, *sn.*(e, er), (*information*) Nachricht, *f.*

work, arbeiten, (*act*) wirken; *n.*, Arbeit, *f.*, (*completed*) Werk, *sn.*; **at —**, an der Arbeit; **go to —**, an die Arbeit gehen; **—man**, Arbeiter, *sm.*

world, Welt, *f.*; **in the —**, (*interj.*), in (auf) der Welt.

worry, quälen; **—ied**, unruhig (30).

worth, werth (*a.*); **—y**, würdig, wert, (*noble*) edel.

wound, Wunde, *f.*; *v.* verletzen; **—ed**, verwundet.

wrist, Handgelenk, *sn.*

write, schreiben; **— down**, niederschreiben, aufschreiben; **—ing book**, Schreibebuch, *sn.*(er), Schreibheft, *sn.*

wrong, unrecht, falsch; **be —**, unrecht haben.

Y.

yawn, gähnen.

year, Jahr, *sn.*; **—s ago**, vor Jahren, Jahre her; **for —s**, Jahre lang.

yell, schreien, heulen.

yesterday, gestern; **the day before** —, vorgestern.

yet, *conj.* doch, dennoch; *adv.* noch; **not** —, noch nicht; **as** —, bis jetzt.

yield, (*give vp, in to*) nachgeben, sich fügen, (*give w* weichen.

yonder, da drüben, dort; *pron.* jener.

young, jung; —**ster**, Junge, *sm.*; — **man**, Jüngling, *sm.*, junger Mann, *sm.*(er).

youth, Jugend, *f.*, (*young man*) Jüngling, *sn.*

gehen aflén = zu Fuss gehen.

Pres. Subj^{ve} never used after

were in conditional Sentences.

auf dass — in order that

so dass — so that

drei Tage Zeit - three days time.

When paar means few it is
spelt with a small letter.
As Gruppe it is spelt sometimes.

bitten - to make a request
fragen - to ask a question
fordern - to demand

Gewalt — force
Macht — power
Kraft (physical) — strength
Stärke (same) — strength

Jugend { person's youth
young people (collective)

Punctuation after inside words
here is not conclusive in the
underlined sentence.

Transitive Verb

Can't have a defendant

[illegible] or the Defendant.

Absent is a Transitive Verb.

Come here - Kommen Sie her

I am going there tomorrow - Ich

gehe Morgen dahin.

Use Prof. I am sure that has taken

[illegible] is a [illegible].

In short properly Historical

Tense.